Learn In Your Car — Japanese is the only language learning system designed to teach a foreign language in your car as you drive, without the aid of a textbook. This booklet contains the entire recorded text for your reference so that you can see how the words are spelled. This booklet also contains additional explanations which will be helpful to you if you have trouble understanding some of the concepts.

ABOUT THIS COURSE

Learn In Your Car — Japanese is designed and organized with the traveler in mind. The following guidelines are used:

1. The basic premise is that communicating in a language requires learning words, phrases, and sentences: but you can't learn to communicate effectively in a language unless you know the individual meaning of each word.

2. The emphasis is on communication. Words, phrases, or sentences can be used to communicate. It is not always necessary to use a complete sentence to convey a thought.

3. It teaches the way a child learns. Children start by learning one-word sentences, then two-word sentences, etc.

4. It teaches the most important things first. This course does not use your valuable memory to store useless words. The important words you need to survive and get around are taught first. Grammar is introduced in the later lessons, but it is taught with examples rather than rules.
5. No more than one new word is introduced at a time. This means you won't hear a sentence or a phrase and wonder which sound corresponds to which word.
6. No textbook is required. The fact that no more than one new word is introduced at a time enables you to use the CDs effectively without referring to a textbook. The CDs are designed to be used without a textbook so that you can use them while driving a car or while doing other things which require similar amounts of concentration.
7. Literal (word-for-word) translations are used as much as possible. This enables you to understand how a sentence or phrase is constructed and what the individual words mean.

HOW TO USE
"LEARN IN YOUR CAR — JAPANESE"

The lessons start immediately at the beginning of Disc One with no introduction so that you don't have to listen to the same introduction over and over again.
Simply start the first disc and play through Lesson One. For each expression, you will hear the English version followed by a pause, then the Japanese translation followed by a pause, then the Japanese translation a second time followed by a third pause. At first, you will only be able to imitate the Japanese words in the two pauses after the Japanese translations (the second and third pauses). As you learn and progress, you will be able to recall and recite the Japanese version during the first pause before you hear the first Japanese translation. Be sure to speak the Japanese expressions out loud. The rate at which you learn will be significantly slower if you do not speak the Japanese expressions aloud.
Play Lesson One several times until you learn most of it. Then start playing Lesson One followed by Lesson Two until you learn most of Lesson Two. As you progress, keep adding lessons. Always go back to the beginning of Lesson One to reinforce the material you have already learned. (As you progress through the material, you may want to restart at some place other than the very beginning of the first disc. This is fine as long as you know all the material ahead of your starting point. Later lessons are designed with the assumption that you already know the material in earlier lessons.)
NOTES ABOUT THE TEXT

• Words which are underlined in phrases in the text have the same meaning in both English and Japanese. When a new word is introduced, it will usually be underlined.
• Literal translations are in parentheses with an “L.” such as: “(L. This is a literal translation)”
• Words in brackets [like this] are understood, but are not heard on the audio.

NOTES ABOUT THE CDs

• The CD format, with each lesson on a separate track, allows you to instantly target the exact lesson you wish to review. The disc and track numbers for each lesson are listed in the Table of Contents.
• The Japanese and English translations are on separate channels. If you wish to hear only the Japanese translations, simply adjust the balance control of your CD player so that you hear only the Japanese version.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to thank Jana Walker, Seiko Mikami, and Yutaka Doi, who helped to make this audio production possible.

—Henry N. Raymond
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

**Disc One, Tracks 1-13:**
1: Lesson 1 . . . Basics  
2: Lesson 2 . . . Basic Phrases  
3: Lesson 3 . . . Transportation Nouns  
4: Lesson 4 . . . Transportation Phrases  
5: Lesson 5 . . . Money  
6: Lesson 6 . . . Hotel  
7: Lesson 7 . . . Important Words  
8: Lesson 8 . . . Directions  
9: Lesson 9 . . . Numbers  
10: Lesson 10 . . More Numbers  
11: Lesson 11 . . Big Numbers  
12: Lesson 12 . . Very Big Numbers  
13: Lesson 13 . . At the Restaurant  

**Disc Two, Tracks 1-9:**
1: Lesson 14 . . Shopping  
2: Lesson 15 . . Time, General  
3: Lesson 16 . . Time of Day  
4: Lesson 17 . . Questions  
5: Lesson 18 . . Shops  
6: Lesson 19 . . Nouns  
7: Lesson 20 . . Adjectives and Adverbs  
8: Lesson 21 . . Verbs  
9: Lesson 22 . . Prepositional Phrases  

**Disc Three, Tracks 1-9:**
1: Lesson 23 . . Prepositional Pronouns  
2: Lesson 24 . . Possessive Adjectives  
3: Lesson 25 . . Conjunctions and Similar Words  
4: Lesson 26 . . Sentences and Phrases, General  
5: Lesson 27 . . Sentences and Phrases, Negative  
6: Lesson 28 . . Wanting to Do Something  
7: Lesson 29 . . Forming Questions  
8: Lesson 30 . . Having to Do Something  
9: Lesson 31 . . Sentences and Phrases, General
Japanese can be written in four different ways. This text uses “Rōmaji” and “Hirigana” for all examples. “Rōmaji” uses the English alphabet to write Japanese words phonetically. “Hiragana” is a phonetic writing system which uses Japanese characters based on Japanese syllables. “Katakana” is a phonetic writing system used to write Japanese words which are derived from foreign languages. “Katakana” is similar to hirigana but uses a different set of Japanese characters. “Kanji” is a picture writing system based on Chinese picture language. “Rōmaji” is used primarily by foreigners because it is easier for them to understand. Different texts which use “Rōmaji” often spell words differently depending on which conventions they use and how the writer pronounces a given word. Spelling differences also exist within given conventions. This can be due to differences in how a word might be pronounced. For example, an “F” or an “H” may often be used interchangeable. Likewise, “tu-” and “tsu-” are often interchanged etc. A double vowel can be expressed by a single vowel with a line above it. (“oo” = “ö” or “aa” = “á” etc.) In English, every word can be spelled either correctly or incorrectly. “Rōmaji” has more leeway when it comes to spelling. In “Rōmaji”, a given word can often be spelled several different ways, all of which would be correct.

The “Hirigana” character chart which follows shows all of the Hirigana characters which exist. Virtually any Japanese word can be written using these phonetic characters. It’s not really very difficult to learn to read Hirigana. Almost any Japanese word which is written in Hiragana can be converted to Rōmaji by using this chart. Likewise, words written in Rōmaji can be converted to Hirigana through use of this chart. Try using this chart to convert a few simple words from Hirigana to Rōmaji and back. You’ll find that it’s not really as difficult as it looks.
### Japanese Syllabary Chart

**HIRAGANA CHARACTERS**

#### Basic Characters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>あ</th>
<th>か</th>
<th>が</th>
<th>さ</th>
<th>ざ</th>
<th>た</th>
<th>だ</th>
<th>な</th>
<th>は</th>
<th>ぱ</th>
<th>ま</th>
<th>ら</th>
<th>わ</th>
<th>ん</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>ka</td>
<td>ga</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>za</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>ha</td>
<td>pa</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>wa</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>い</td>
<td>き</td>
<td>ぎ</td>
<td>し</td>
<td>じ</td>
<td>ち</td>
<td>ぢ</td>
<td>に</td>
<td>ひ</td>
<td>び</td>
<td>み</td>
<td>り</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ki</td>
<td>gi</td>
<td>shi</td>
<td>ji</td>
<td>chi</td>
<td>ji</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>hi</td>
<td>bi</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>ri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>う</td>
<td>く</td>
<td>ぐ</td>
<td>す</td>
<td>ず</td>
<td>つ</td>
<td>づ</td>
<td>ぬ</td>
<td>ふ</td>
<td>ぶ</td>
<td>む</td>
<td>る</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>gu</td>
<td>su</td>
<td>zu</td>
<td>tsu</td>
<td>zu</td>
<td>nu</td>
<td>fu</td>
<td>bu</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>ru</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>え</td>
<td>け</td>
<td>げ</td>
<td>せ</td>
<td>ぜ</td>
<td>と</td>
<td>で</td>
<td>ね</td>
<td>へ</td>
<td>べ</td>
<td>め</td>
<td>れ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>ke</td>
<td>ge</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>ze</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>ne</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>re</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>お</td>
<td>こ</td>
<td>ご</td>
<td>そ</td>
<td>ぞ</td>
<td>と</td>
<td>ど</td>
<td>の</td>
<td>ほ</td>
<td>ぼ</td>
<td>ま</td>
<td>ろ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>ko</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>zo</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>ho</td>
<td>bo</td>
<td>po</td>
<td>mo</td>
<td>ro</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Combination Characters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>や</th>
<th>きゃ</th>
<th>ぎゃ</th>
<th>しゃ</th>
<th>じゃ</th>
<th>ちゃ</th>
<th>へゃ</th>
<th>びゃ</th>
<th>ぴゃ</th>
<th>みゃ</th>
<th>りゃ</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>kya</td>
<td>gya</td>
<td>sha</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>cha</td>
<td>nya</td>
<td>hya</td>
<td>bya</td>
<td>pya</td>
<td>mya</td>
<td>rya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ゆ</td>
<td>きゅ</td>
<td>ぐや</td>
<td>しゅ</td>
<td>じゅ</td>
<td>ちゅ</td>
<td>にゅ</td>
<td>ひゅ</td>
<td>びゅ</td>
<td>ぴゅ</td>
<td>みゅ</td>
<td>りゅ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu</td>
<td>kyu</td>
<td>gyu</td>
<td>shu</td>
<td>ju</td>
<td>chu</td>
<td>nyu</td>
<td>hyu</td>
<td>byu</td>
<td>pyu</td>
<td>myu</td>
<td>ryu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>よ</td>
<td>きょ</td>
<td>ぎょ</td>
<td>しょ</td>
<td>じょ</td>
<td>ちょ</td>
<td>にょ</td>
<td>ひょ</td>
<td>びょ</td>
<td>ぴょ</td>
<td>みょ</td>
<td>りょ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>kyo</td>
<td>gyo</td>
<td>sho</td>
<td>jo</td>
<td>cho</td>
<td>nyo</td>
<td>hyo</td>
<td>byo</td>
<td>pyo</td>
<td>myo</td>
<td>ryo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued on the next page)
LESSON 1 - BASICS

I ........................................... watashi / watakushi ........................................... わたし / わたくし
you ........................................... anata ........................................... あなた
he ........................................... kare ........................................... かれ
she ........................................... kanojo ........................................... かのじょ
this ........................................... kore ........................................... これ
that / it ........................................... sore ........................................... それ
that over there ........................................... are ........................................... あれ
we ........................................... watashitachi / watakushitachi ........................................... わたしたち / わたくしたち
you (plural as in "you people") ........................................... anatagata ........................................... あなたがた
they (all males or mixed) ........................................... karera ........................................... かれら
they (all females) ........................................... kanojora / kanojotachi ........................................... かのじょら / かのじょたち
they (neutral) [for objects] ........................................... sorera ........................................... それら
Good morning. (informal) ........................................... Ohayō ........................................... おはよう。
Good morning. (formal) ........................................... Ohayō gozaimasu. ........................................... おはようございます。
Hello. / Good day. / Good afternoon. ........................................... Konnichi wa. ........................................... こんにちは。
Good evening. ........................................... Konban wa. ........................................... こんばんは。
Good night. ........................................... Oyasumi nasai ........................................... おやすみなさい。
Good-bye. ........................................... Sayōnara. ........................................... さようなら。
...please ........................................... onegai shimasu / kudasai ........................................... おねがいします / ください
Thank you. (informal) ........................................... Arigatō ........................................... ありがとう。
Thank you. (formal) ........................................... Dōmo arigatō. ........................................... どうもありがとう。
You're welcome. / Don't mention it. ........................................... Dō itashimashite. ........................................... どういたしまして。
yes ........................................... hai ........................................... はい
no ........................................... iie ........................................... いいえ
Mr. / Mrs. / Miss ........................................... san ........................................... さん
"Ohayoo" is used before 10 or 11 a.m. "Konnichi wa" is used between 10 or 11 a.m. and 5 or 6 p.m. or dark. "Konban wa" is used after 5 p.m. or after dark. These expressions are greetings and should be used when you meet someone, but not when you leave.

The word "kudasai" does not really mean "please". This word is often attached to certain forms of verbs to make polite requests. In this manner it functions as the Japanese equivalent of "please". It is also used after nouns to request things. The word "kudasai" is not used alone. The phrase "onegai shimasu" (L. [I] make a request.) differs slightly in that it can be used alone and is a little more polite.

The Japanese language and the Japanese culture are tied together. It is not possible to learn to speak Japanese fluently without understanding some details of Japanese culture. In order to use the correct grammatical category (such as "honorsic", "neutral", or "humble"), it is necessary to know the relative social status of the speaker (first person), the listener (second person) and the person referred to (third person). This is necessary because the pronouns "I" (watashi), "you" (anata), "he" (kare), "she" (kanojo), "we" (watashitachi), "you people" (anatagata) and "they" (karera) are usually not used. Instead, the Japanese often understand who is being referred to based on the appropriate grammatical category used which is directly related to their social status. Different grammatical categories are used to refer to or talk to people of higher, lower or equal social status. However these pronouns will be used when there is any question about whom a sentence is referring to.

In the Japanese language, there are 2 levels of formality ("formal" and "informal") and 3 levels of deference ("honorsic", "plain or neutral" and "humble") These work independent of each other. The level of formality which is used depends on the formality of the situation. The level of deference expresses how the speaker feels in relation to the person he is talking to or about. "Honorsic" is used to talk to or about people in a social status higher than the speaker. "Neutral" is used to talk to or about associates or equals and "humble" is used to humble one's own status in the presence of others. In this text, the "formal, neutral" forms of words will usually be used. This is a good "safe" way for a student of Japanese to start. A student of Japanese should be able to use the "formal, neutral" form without offending people or appearing absurd.
**LESSON 2 - じゅぎょう2 -**

**BASIC PHRASES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a ticket</td>
<td>kippu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May I have a ticket? / Ticket please</td>
<td>Kippu kudasai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a want / a desire / a wish</td>
<td>hoshii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is wanted / is desired</td>
<td>hoshii desu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I want a ticket. / A ticket is desired</td>
<td>Kippu o hoshii desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I want a ticket. [L. I, ticket, is desired.]</td>
<td>Watashi wa kippu o hoshii desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is not desired.</td>
<td>Hoshiku wa nai desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't want a ticket.</td>
<td>Watashi wa kippu o hoshiku wa nai desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's a ticket. / That's a ticket.</td>
<td>Sore wa kippu desu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is it a ticket? / Is that a ticket?</td>
<td>Sore wa kippu desu ka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where?</td>
<td>doko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where is (it)? / Where is ...?</td>
<td>doko desu ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bank</td>
<td>ginkō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where is the bank?</td>
<td>Ginkō wa doko desu ka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where is the toilet?</td>
<td>Otearai wa doko desu ka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how much</td>
<td>ikura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much is it? / How much is ...?</td>
<td>Ikura desu ka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much is the ticket?</td>
<td>Kippu wa ikura desu ka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how many</td>
<td>ikutsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time / hour / o'clock</td>
<td>ji</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At what time?</td>
<td>Nan ji ni.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to have / to exist (for inanimate objects)</td>
<td>arimasu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you have...? / Does (it) exist? [L. ... exists?] arimasu ka. ありますか。
water mizu みず
Do you have water? / Does water exist? Mizu ga arimasu ka. みずがありませんか。
I understand Watashi wa wakarimasu. / Wakarimasu わたしはわかります。/ わかります。
I don't understand Watashi wa wakarimasen. / Wakarimasen わたしはわかりません。/ わかりません。
Do you understand? Anata wa wakarimasu ka. / Wakarimasuka あなたはわかりますか。/ わかりますか。
Negatives are usually formed by changing the endings of the verbs. Notice the difference between "wakarimasu" (understand) and "wakarimasen" (don't understand).

Question marks are not used in Japanese. The word "ka" is the Japanese equivalent of a question mark ("?"). In most cases, statements can be changed into questions by adding the word "ka" to the end of the statement.

In Japanese, "particles" or "relationals" such as "wa", "ga" and "o" are used to connect words or phrases to other parts of the sentence. Particles also show grammatical functions (subject, direct object, etc.) of words or phrases in a sentence. For example, in the sentence "Watashi wa kippu o hoshigarimassen." (I don't want a ticket.) the particle "wa" identifies "Watashi" (I) as the topic of the sentence. The particle "o" identifies the word "kippu" (ticket) as the direct object of the verb "hoshigarimasen" (desire does not exist). These particles always follow the words which they refer to.

The Japanese word "desu" is called a "copula". It has various meanings but can usually be translated as "is" or "equals". Japanese sentences are often difficult to translate literally into English. For example, the sentence "I would like a ticket." (Watashi wa kippu o hoshii desu.) can be more or less translated like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Watashi</th>
<th>wa</th>
<th>kippu</th>
<th>o</th>
<th>hoshii</th>
<th>desu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(I)</td>
<td>(relational)</td>
<td>(ticket)</td>
<td>(relational)</td>
<td>(want)</td>
<td>(is) (desired)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the above example, the relational "wa" identifies "watashi" as the topic of the sentence, and the relational "o" identifies "kippu" as the object of the verb.

The particle "ga" identifies the word preceding it as the grammatical subject of a sentence. The word preceding "ga" is the word which is emphasized in a sentence.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TRANSPORTATION NOUNS</th>
<th>NORIMONO NO MEISHI</th>
<th>のりものもののめいし</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>train / a train / the train / the trains</td>
<td>densha</td>
<td>でんしゃ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a first class train car</td>
<td>gurinsha</td>
<td>ぐりーんしゃ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the subway</td>
<td>chikatetsu</td>
<td>ちかてつ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an automobile</td>
<td>jidōsha / kuruma</td>
<td>じどうしゃ / くるま</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a taxi / the taxi / the taxis</td>
<td>takushī</td>
<td>たくしー</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a ship / the ship / some ships</td>
<td>fune</td>
<td>ふね</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the boat</td>
<td>bōto</td>
<td>ぼーと</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an airplane / some airplanes</td>
<td>hikōki</td>
<td>ひこうき</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bus / the busses</td>
<td>basu</td>
<td>はす</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the bus stop</td>
<td>basu no noriba</td>
<td>バスののりば</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the ticket window / the ticket office</td>
<td>kippu uriba</td>
<td>きっぷうりば</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the ticket machine</td>
<td>kippu no hanbaiki</td>
<td>きっぷのはんぱいき</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an airport</td>
<td>kūkō / hikōjō</td>
<td>くこう / ひこうじょう</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the flight</td>
<td>hikō</td>
<td>ひこう</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a connecting flight</td>
<td>noritsugiban</td>
<td>のりつぎびん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a connecting train</td>
<td>setsuzoku densha</td>
<td>せつぞくでんしゃ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a connection (for transportation)</td>
<td>keiyu</td>
<td>けいゆ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a toilet</td>
<td>toire / otearai</td>
<td>といれ / おてあらい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the gate (in an airport)</td>
<td>geito</td>
<td>げいと</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the railroad</td>
<td>tetsudo</td>
<td>てつどう</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a station / a depot</td>
<td>eki</td>
<td>えき</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the train station / train's station</td>
<td>densha no eki</td>
<td>でんしゃのえき</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the bus station ................................................................. basu tei ................................................................. はすてい
what / which ................................................................. nan ................................................................. なん
what number ................................................................. nan ban ................................................................. なんばん
which platform / what number platform ................................ nan ban hōmu ................................................................. なんばんほーむ
Which number platform is it? ........................................ Nan ban hōmu desu ka. ................................................................. なんばんほーむですか。
Which number track is it? .............................................. Nan ban sen desu ka. ................................................................. なんばんせんですか。
Which train car is it? ..................................................... Nan gōsha desu ka. ................................................................. なんごしゃですか。
the bullet train or super express ..................................... shinkansen ................................................................. しんかんせん
a limited express train [few stops] ................................. tokkyū ................................................................. とっきゅう
an ordinary express [more stops] ................................. kyūkō ................................................................. きゅうこう
a local train [many stops] .............................................. futsū ................................................................. ふそう

There are no equivalent words in Japanese for the English articles "the", "a", "an" or "some". There is also no difference in Japanese between a singular noun and a plural noun. For example, "a ticket", "the ticket", "the tickets" and "some tickets" all translate into "kippu".

The particle "no" indicates possession. For example, "densha no eki" (train station) literally means "train's station". Likewise "watashi no kuruma" means "my car" and "Michael no kippu" means "Michael's ticket".
TRANSPORTATION PHRASES

Where is the train station? Densha no eki wa doko desu ka.
To the train station, please. [Densha no] eki ni onegai shimasu.
To the airport, please. Kūkō ni onegai shimasu.
I want a taxi. / Taxi is desired. Takushi ga hoshii desu.
I would like a ticket. / Ticket is desired. Kippu ga hoshii desu.
until / as far as made no kippu
a ticket to Kyōto Kyōto made no kippu
the train to Kyōto Kyōto made no densha
the train from Tokyo Tōkyō kara densha
the train from Tokyo to Kyōto Tōkyō kara Kyōto made no densha
How much is it? Ikura desu ka
first class itō
second class nitō
A second class ticket please. nitō no kippu kudasai
a one way ticket katamichi kippu
a round trip ticket ōfuku kippu
to smoke / to suck tobacco sü tabako o sü
no smoking kinen
At what time does the train leave? / At what time does the train exit? Densha wa nan ji ni demasu ka
At what time does the train arrive? Densha wa nan ji ni tsukimasu ka
bound for / for yuki
Where is the bus to Yokohama? [L. Yokohama yuki no basu wa doko desu ka. ... どこはまゆきのバスはどこですか。]

which, what ど どこ... どの どのばんごう
which number ど どのばんごうですか。
Which number is it? ど どのせきですか。
Which seat is it? ど どのせきですか。
It's seat number five. ごばんのせきです。 じこくひょう
a timetable / a schedule じこくひょう
It's the first train. さいしょのでんしゃです。 さいしょのでんしゃです。
It's the second train. にばんのでんしゃです。 にばんのでんしゃです。
Is it the next train? つぎのでんしゃですか。 つぎのでんしゃですか。
Is it the last train? さいごのでんしゃですか。 さいごのでんしゃですか。

This lesson shows the use of several "relational" or "particles". In the sentence "Densha no eki wa doko desu ka." (Where is the train station?) the relational "wa" marks "densha no eki" (train station) as the "topic" of the sentence. In the sentence "Kippu ga hoshii desu." which means "I would like a ticket," or more literally "Ticket is desired." the relational "ga" marks "kippu" (ticket) as the "grammatical subject" of the sentence. More will be said about the difference between the "topic" and the "grammatical subject" later. For now, consider the "topic" and the "subject" to be the same thing. The relational "no" which shows possession is used idiomatically in "made no" and means "to". Likewise "kara no" means "from".

The word order of Japanese sentences is different from English. English uses "SUBJECT - VERB - OBJECT" word order (as in "Man bites dog"), whereas Japanese uses "SUBJECT - OBJECT - VERB" word order (as in "Man dog bites"). The main difference between English and Japanese word order is that in Japanese, the verb comes at the end of the sentence. Japanese sentences, even incomplete ones, must have predicates. (In Japanese, a predicate is a verb or verb form and the words that follow it.) This is different from English. For example, in English, if someone were to point to a ticket or a train and ask "What is that?", you could answer simply "A ticket." (kippu) or "A train." (densha). Such answers would not be proper in Japanese because they don't contain predicates. A proper answer would be "Kippu desu." (Ticket is.) or "Densha desu." (Train is.) However, if you are engaged in a primitive Japanese conversation with a Japanese person, you would probably be understood if you used phrases without predicates.
LESSON 5 - MONEY .......................... JUGYŌ 5 - OKANE .......................... じゅぎょう5 - おかね

money (neutral form) .......................... kane .......................... かね
money (honfonic form) ................................ okane .......................... おかね
Japanese money ................................ Nihon no okane .......................... にほんのおかね
Japanese yen ................................ Nihon no en .......................... にほんのえん
American dollars ................................ Amerika no doru .......................... あめりかのどる
British ................................ Igrisu no .......................... いぎりすの
British pounds ................................ Igrisu no pondo .......................... いぎりすのぽんど
Where is the bank? .............................. Ginkō wa doko desu ka .......................... ぎんこうはどこですか。
money exchange ................................ ryōgæ .......................... りょうがえ
Where is the currency exchange office? .............................. ryōgaejo wa doko desu ka .......................... りょうがえじょはどこですか。
small change / coin / coins ........................ koka .......................... こうか
change given back ................................ otsuri .......................... おつり
to do / to make ................................ suru .......................... する
to change money / to do money exchange .............................. ryōgæ suru .......................... りょうがえする
money exchange ................................ okane no ryōgæ .......................... おかねのりょうが
To want to do / To have a desire to do .............................. shitai desu .......................... したいです
I would like to change some money. / I would like to .............................. Okane o ryōgæ shitai desu .......................... おかねをりょうがえしたいです。
do money exchange.
to buy ........................................... kaimasu [kau] .......................... かいます [かう]
to want to buy / to have a desire to buy .............................. kaitai desu .......................... かいたいです
I would like to buy some Japanese yen .............................. Nihon no en ga kaitai desu .......................... にほんのえんがかいたいです。
the rate of exchange ................................ kōkanrēto .......................... こうかんれーと
How much is the rate of exchange? .............................. Kōkan rēto wa ikura desu ka .......................... こうかんれーとはいくらですか。
I would like some small change. / Small change is desired .............................. Kōka ga hoshii desu .......................... こうかがほしいです。
Many Japanese nouns can be converted from "neutral form" to "honorific form" by adding an "o" to the beginning of the word. In this lesson, the neutral noun "kane" (money) is changed to honorific form by adding an "o" (okane). Certain nouns, such as "money" and "toilet" (otearai) and others are more likely to be used in honorific forms, especially by women. Honorific forms are used to speak to or about people of higher social status than the speaker such as one's elder or one's boss. They are also used to speak about things that the speaker may not feel comfortable talking about. At this point in your studies, it is not important to know when to use an honorific form. It is however useful to know that many Japanese words can be spelled and pronounced with or without an "o" at the beginning.
a hotel .................................................. hoteru .................................................. ほてる
a youth hostel ........................................ yūsū hosuteru ......................................... ゆースホステル
a room .................................................. heya .................................................... へや
a good room .......................................... ii heya ................................................ いいへや
a better room / a more good room .......... motto ii heya .............................................. もっといいへや
I would like a better room. / Better room is desired. Motto ii heya ga hoshii desu もっといいへやがほしいです。
a Japanese bath tub or hot bath ............... furo / ofuro ........................................... ふろ / おふろ
a room with a bathtub or a public bath .... furoba ..................................................... ふろば
with a toilet / toilet attached ............... oteara tsuki no .......................................... おてあらいつきの
without a toilet / [ L. toilet nothing ] ...... oteara nashi no .......................................... おてあらいなしえの
a shower .............................................. shawā .................................................... シャワー
a wash basin ........................................ senmendai / senmenjo せんめんだい / せんめんじょ
a bathroom / a rest room [a room with a toilet in it] yokushitsu よくしつ
I would like a room with a bath. / Bath attached Furo tsuki no heya ga hoshii desu. ふろつきのへやがほしいです。
rooms is desired. ......................................
I would like a room with a shower. .......... Shawā tsuki no heya ga hoshii desu. しゃわつきのへやがほしいです。
and a shower ........................................ shawā to ................................................ しゃわっと
How much is it? ..................................... Ikura desu ka いくらですか
cheap .................................................. yasui .................................................. やすい
cheaper / more cheap ......................... motto yasui ........................................... ふっとやすい
expensive ............................................. takai .................................................... たかいい
too expensive ...................................... takasugi たかすぎ
It's too expensive. ............................... Takasugimasu たかすぎます。
to have / to exist (for inanimate objects) .. arimasu .................................................. あります
Do you have a cheaper room? / Does a cheaper room exist?
Motto yasui heya wa arimasu ka.

Do you have the key? / Does a key exist?
Kagi wa arimasu ka.

A week
shū

Per week / A period of one week
isshūkan

Per night / A period of 24 hours
ippaku

How much is it per night?
Ippaku wa ikura desu ka.

Air conditioning [equipment]
reibō sóchī

Vacancy / Opening
akishitsu

No vacancy / Full
manshitsu

(It) works
 Ugokimasu.

(It) doesn't work
 Ugokimasen.

The shower doesn't work.
Shawā ga ugokimasen.

The shower is broken.
Shawā ga kowareta.

A reservation
yoyaku

To make a reservation / To do a reservation
yoyaku suru

To want to do / To want to make / To have a desire to do
shitai desu

I would like to make a reservation.
Yoyaku ga shitai desu.

I would like a single room. / A single is good.
Shingunyu ga i desu.

I would like a double room. / A double is good.
Daburu ga i desu.

**LESSON 7 - JUGYŌ7**
**TAISETSU NA TANGO**

**IMPORTANT WORDS**

The water
mizu
the drinkable water..............................nomeru mizu...............................のめるみず
the luggage [full luggage]......................nimotsu..................................にもつ
my luggage..................................watashi no nimotsu........................わたしのにもつ
the suitcase.................................sutsukēsu.................................す一つけーす
my suitcase.................................watashi no sutsukēsu........................わたしのす一つけーす
this one .....................................kono........................................この
that one .....................................sono............................................その
that one over there............................ano.........................................あの
this suitcase.................................kono sutsukēsu..............................このす一つけーす
that suitcase.................................sono sutsukēsu..............................そのす一つけーす
that suitcase over there......................ano sutsukēsu..............................あのす一つけーす
this ticket..................................kono kippu.................................このきっぷ
a backpack..................................ryukku sakku..............................りゅっくさく
the baggage check............................nimotsu azukari jo..................尼部あずかりじょ
a locker......................................rokkā....................................ろっかー
the key........................................kagi......................................かぎ
the town.......................................machi..............................まち
the city........................................shi.......................................し
a map...........................................chizu....................................ちず
a map of the town [L. town's map]...........machi no chizu..........................まちのちず
open...........................................aiteiru................................あいている
closed.........................................shimatteiru..............................しまっている
the passport................................pasupōto................................ぱすぽーと
the police.....................................keisatsu................................けいさつ
the police officer.............................keikan..................................けいかん
The city center...............................chūshingai..............................ちゅうしんがい
The old city..................................furuimachi..............................ふるいまち
LESSON 8 - DIRECTIONS ........................................... JUGYŌ8 - HōKō .................................................. じゅぎょう8 - ほうこう

to the right ................................................. migi e .................................................. みぎへ
to the left .................................................... hidari e .................................................. ひだらへ
turn right .................................................... migi e magatte ........................................... みぎへまがって
turn left ....................................................... hidari e magatte ........................................... ひだらへまがって
It's on the left ............................................... Hidari no hō ni desu ....................................... ひだりのほうにです。
It's straight ahead ......................................... Massugu desu .................................................. まっすぐです。
the corner .................................................... kado .......................................................... かど
It's around the corner .................................... Kado no mawari ni arimasu ............................. かどのまわりにあります。
the street ..................................................... michi .......................................................... みち
the side ....................................................... gawa ........................................................... がわ
the other side ............................................... mukōgawa ............................................... むこうがわ
the other side of the street ............................. mukōgawa no michi ...................................... むこうがわのみち
the end of the street / street's end ..................... michi no owari ........................................... みちのおわり
Go! .............................................................. Itte ............................................................ いって。
Go to the bank please. ................................... Ginkō e itte kudasai / Ginkō ni itte kudasai .......................... ぎんこうにいってください。

here ............................................................. koko ......................................................... ここ
there ........................................................... soko ......................................................... そこ
over there .................................................. asoko .......................................................... あそこ
near ........................................................... chikaku [adverb] / chikai [adjective] .................. ちかく / ちかい
It's near the corner ....................................... Kado no chikaku ni arimasu ............................ かどのちかくにあります
far .............................................................. tōi ............................................................. とおい
far from here .............................................. koko kara tōi .............................................. ここからとおい
Is it far from here? ....................................... Koko kara tōi desu ka ................................... ここからとおいですか。
this address .............................................................. kono jūsho .............................................................. このじょしょ
next to ................................................................. no tonari ni .............................................................. のとなりに
It's next to the bank. / Exists next to the bank. .......... Ginkō no tonari ni arimasu. .......................................... ぎんこうのとなりにあります。
as far as... / until .................................................. made ............................................................... まで
as far as the bank ................................................... ginkō made ......................................................... ぎんこうまで
Go as far as the corner please. .................. Kado made itte kudasai. .................................................. かどまでいってください。
next week ............................................................ raishū .............................................................. らいしゅう
until next week .................................................... raishū made ....................................................... らいしゅうまで

LESSON 9 - ........................................................... JUGYŌ 9- ............................................................ じゅぎょう9－
NUMBERS ............................................................. ZEROKARA JŪMADE ぜろからじゅうまで
0 ................................................................. zero .............................................................. ぜろ
1 ................................................................. ichi .............................................................. いち
2 ................................................................. ni .............................................................. に
3 ................................................................. san .............................................................. さん
4 ................................................................. yon / shi [alternate] ............................................. よん / し
5 ................................................................. go .............................................................. ご
6 ................................................................. roku .............................................................. ろく
7 ................................................................. nana / shichi [alternate] ....................................... なな / しち
8 ................................................................. hachi ............................................................. はち
9 ................................................................. ku / kyū ...................................................... く / きゅう
10 ................................................................. jū .............................................................. じゅう

The Japanese numbers 4, 7 and 9 each have two different names which can often be used interchangably as noted in the lesson above. "Shi" is most commonly used when referring to the number 4 by itself as in "4", "24", "134" etc. When "4" is used in multiples of ten such as "40", "400", "4000" etc, "yon" is preferred. The same applies to "7" where the use of "shichi" is similar to the use of "shi".
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 10</th>
<th>JUGYŌ 10 -</th>
<th>じゅぎょう10 -</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MORE NUMBERS</td>
<td>じゅういちからにじゅうまで</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>jū-ichi</td>
<td>じゅういち</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>jū-ni</td>
<td>じゅうに</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>jū-san</td>
<td>じゅうさん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>jū-shi / jū-yon</td>
<td>じゅうし / じゅうよん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>jū-go</td>
<td>じゅうご</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>jū-roku</td>
<td>じゅろく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>jū-nana / jū-shichi</td>
<td>じゅうなな / じゅうしち</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>jū-hachi</td>
<td>じゅうはち</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>jū-ku / jū-kyū</td>
<td>じゅうく / じゅうきゅう</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>ni-jū</td>
<td>にじゅ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LESSON 11</th>
<th>JUGYŌ 11 -</th>
<th>じゅぎょう11 -</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIG NUMBERS</td>
<td>にじゅういちから</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>ni-jū-ichi</td>
<td>にじゅういち</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>ni-jū-ni</td>
<td>にじゅうに</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>san-jū</td>
<td>さんじゅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>san-jū-ichi</td>
<td>さんじゅいち</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>san-jū-san</td>
<td>さんじゅさん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>yon-jū / [shi-jū]</td>
<td>よんじゅ / [しじゅ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>go-jū</td>
<td>ごじゅ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 12 - じゅぎょう12 -

VERY BIG NUMBERS

JŪ-OKU MADE

100 .......................... hyaku ひゃく
107 .......................... hyaku-nana / [hyaku-shichi] ひゃくなな / [ひゃくしち]
200 .......................... ni-hyaku にゃく
220 .......................... ni-hyaku-ni-jū にゃくにじゅ
300 .......................... san-byaku さんびゃく
400 .......................... yon-hyaku よんびゃく
500 .......................... go-hyaku ごびゃく
600 .......................... ro-ppyaku ろっぴゃく
700 .......................... nana-hyaku ななびゃく
800 .......................... ha-ppyaku らっぴゃく
900 .......................... kyu-hyaku きゅうびゃく
1000 ........................ sen せん
1200 ........................ sen-ni-hyaku せんにゃく
1300 ........................ sen-san-byaku せんさんびゃく
2000 .......................................................... ni-sen .......................................................... にせん
3000 .......................................................... san-zen .......................................................... さんぜん
10,000 .......................................................... ichi-man ....................................................... いちまん
100,000 ....................................................... ju-man ........................................................... じゅうまん
1,000,000 .................................................... hyaku-man .................................................... ひゃくまん
100,000,000 ................................................. ichi-oku .......................................................... いちおく
1,000,000,000 ................................................ jū-oku .......................................................... じゅうおく

Notice that Japanese has a unit of 10,000 called "man". High priced items may have signs showing the price in "man". For example, a car with a price advertised as 125 is probably 1,250,000 yen. The last four zeros may be dropped.


A table .......................................................... tēburu .......................................................... てーぶる
How many people ........................................... nan nin .......................................................... なんにん
For how many? / How many people is it? .......... Nan nin desu ka ............................................... なんにんですか。
For one person. / It's one person ..................... Hitori desu. ..................................................... ひとりです。
For two people. / [L. It's two people.] ............... Futari desu. ..................................................... ふたりです。
For three people. [L. It's three people.] .......... San-nin desu. ...................................................... さん人にんです。
I would like a table for 2. / A two person table please. ..... Futari yō no tēburu o onegai shimasu. ふたりようのにーぶるをおねがいします。
Good / Nice .................................................. ii ................................................................. いい
I would like this one. / This table is good. ............ Kono tēburu ga ii desu. このようなてーぶるがいいです。
I would like that one. / That table is good. .......... Sono tēburu ga ii desu. そのようなてーぶるがいいです。
Another table / A different table ......................... betsu no tēburu ........................................... べつのてーぶる
Do you have another table? / Does another table exist? .. Betu no tēburu ga arimasu ka. べつのてーぶるがありますか。
the window ............................................................ mado ............................................................ まど
Near the window please. / Make it near the window please. Mado no chikaku ni shite kudasai ............................................................ まどのちかくにしてください。
The menu, please. menyū o kudasai ........................... めにゅーをください。
The bill, please. okanjo o kudasai .............................. おかんじょうをください。
Is included. fukumareteimasu .................................... ふくまれて
Is the service [tip] included? Sābiveryō wa fukumareteimasu ka .................. さーびすりょうはふくまれていますか。
the soup .............................................................. sūpu ......................................................... すーぷ
the salad ............................................................. sarada ......................................................... さらだ
an appetizer .......................................................... zensai ......................................................... ぜんさい
a dessert ............................................................. dezāo .......................................................... デザート
a drink ............................................................... nomimono .................................................. のみもの
the waiter ............................................................ ueita ......................................................... えいたー
to call a waiter or waitress [to get the waiter’s attention] Sumimasen! .................. すみません！
to pay / pay ........................................................ haraimasu .................................................... はらいます
I would like to pay ..................................................... Watashi wa haraitai desu ....................... わたしははらいたいです。
two things / two items ............................................. futatsu .................................................... ふたつ
Two coffees, please. Kōhi o futatsu kudasai. .................. こーひーをふたつください。
Would you like a dessert? / Is dessert desired? Dezāo ga hoshii desu ka .......................... デザートがほしいですか。

When counting people in Japanese, one person is “hitori”, two people are “futari” and three people and above are “number” + “nin”. For example, “san-nin” (three people), “yo-min” (four people) etc.
LESSON 14 - SHOPPING

How much is it? .............................................................. Ikura desu ka. ..............................................................いくらですか。
This please. ............................................................... Kore o kudasai ..............................................................これをください。
That please. ............................................................... Sore o kudasai ..............................................................それをください。
That over there please. ............................................... Are o kudasai ..............................................................あれをください。
tall ................................................................. takai ..............................................................たかい
taller / more tall ...................................................... motto takai ..............................................................もっとたかい
tallest / number one tall ........................................ ichi ban takai ..............................................................いちばんたかい
large ................................................................. okii ..............................................................おおきい
larger / more large ................................................... motto okii ..............................................................もっとおおきい
largest [L. number one large] .................................... ichi ban okii ..............................................................いちばんおおきい
small ................................................................. chiisai ..............................................................ちいさい
smaller ................................................................. motto chiisai ..............................................................もっとちいさい
smallest ............................................................... ichi ban chiisai ..............................................................いちばんちいさい
short ................................................................. mijikai ..............................................................みじかい
shorter ................................................................. motto mijikai ..............................................................もっとみじかい
shortest .............................................................. ichi ban mijikai ..............................................................いちばんみじかい
like this ............................................................... kono kanji ..............................................................このかんじ
It's like that. ............................................................. Sono kanji desu. ..............................................................そのかんじです。
like this but bigger .................................................. kono kanji dakedo motto okii ..............................................................このかんじだけれどももっとおおきい
It's like that but better. ......................................... Sono kanji dakedo motto ii desu. ..............................................................そのかんじだけれどもっといいです。
more expensive .......................................................... motto takai ..........................................................もっとたかい
It's very expensive. ............................................. Toten no takai desu. ...........................................とてもたかいです。
cheap ................................................................. yasui ..............................................................やすい
cheaper ............................................................. motto yasui ......................................................もっとやすい
inexpensive ....................................................... takakurai ........................................................たかくな
too expensive ..................................................... takasugiru ..................................................... たかすぎる
It's too expensive. ............................................. Takasugimasu .................................................. たかすぎます。
a thing ............................................................... mono ...............................................................ものの
Would you like something like this?/ Is this kind of thing desired?
I would like something like this. / A thing like this ........... Kono kanji no mono ga hoshii desu ka. ..................このかんじのものがほしいですか。
I want something cheaper. / Cheaper thing is desired. ....... Motto yasui mono ga hoshii desu. .......................もっとやすいものがほしいです。
a book ............................................................... hon .................................................................本
I am looking for a book. ...................................... Hon o sagashiteimasu ..................................... 本をさがしています。
Yes, like this [is]. .............................................. Hai, kono kanji desu. ..............................................はい、このかんじです。
It's like that. .................................................... Sono kanji desu ................................................そのかんじです。
It's not like that. ............................................. Sono kanji dewa arimasen....................................そのかんじではありません。
No, it's not like this ........................................... Iie, kono kanji dewa arimasen ..............................いいえ、このかんじではありません。
Thank you very much. ....................................... Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu .................................どうもありがとうございます。
You're welcome. ............................................. Dō itashimashite ...............................................どういたしまして。

The negative of the copula "desu" ("is" or "equals") is "dewa arimasen" or "jaa arimasen" ("is not" or "does not equal"). "Dewa arimasen" is a little more formal and is used more in written Japanese. "Jaa arimasen" is actually a contraction of "dewa arimasen".
LESSON 15 - TIME, GENERAL  JUGYÖ 15 - JIKAN  じゅぎょう15 - じかん

a moment ........................................... matte  まって
the day ........................................... nichi  にち
the week .......................................... shū  しゅう
the month ........................................... getsu / tsuki  げつ / つき
the year ........................................... toshi / nen  とし / ねん
today ................................................ kyō  きょう
tomorrow ......................................... ashita  あした
yesterday ......................................... kinō  きのう
the day after tomorrow ....................... asatte  あさって
the day before yesterday ..................... ototoi  おととい
now ................................................ ima  いま
not now ............................................ ima ja nai  いまじゃない
not yet ............................................. mada  まだ
this year ........................................... kotoshi  ことし
next year ......................................... rainen  らいねん
last year .......................................... kyonen  きょねん
what year .......................................... nannen  なんねん
one year .......................................... ichinen  いちねん
one year's time .................................. ichinenkan  いちねんかん
one day ........................................... ichinichi  いちにち
two days .......................................... futsuka  ふつか
in two days ...................................... futsuka go  ふつかご
within two days .................................. futsuka no hani nai ni  ふつかのはんいないに
two days ago / two days before ........................................... futsuka mae .......................... ふつかまえ
two times .................................................................................. nido / nikai .......................... にど / にかい
three times ................................................................................ sando / sankai .......................... さんど / さんかい
one more time / again [L. more one time] ................................. mō ichido .......................... もういちど

LESSON 16 - ................................................................. JUGYÔ 16 - ........................................
TIME OF DAY ................................................................................. IMA NAN JI DESU KA.
the time / the hour ................................................................................... jikan .......................... じかん
on time ............................................................................................. jikan dōri ni .......................... じかんどおりに
The train comes on time. ................................................................. Densha wa jikan dōri ni kimasu. でんしゃはじかんどおりにきます
how long ............................................................................................ nan jikan .......................... なんだいかん
How long is it? [time] ........................................................................ Nan jikan desu ka. なんじですか
What time is it? / What hour is (it)? ............................................ Nan jī desu ka. なんじですか
the morning ....................................................................................... asa / gozen .......................... あさ / ごせん
noon ...................................................................................................... hiru .......................... ひる
the afternoon ...................................................................................... gogo .......................... ごご
the evening .......................................................................................... ban .......................... ばん
the night ......................................................................................... yoru .......................... よる
midnight .............................................................................................. ma-yonaka .......................... もよなか
a second ............................................................................................. byō .......................... びょう
a minute ............................................................................................. fun / pun .......................... ふん / ぶん
an hour .............................................................................................. jikan .......................... じかん
8 o'clock ............................................................................................. hachi ji .......................... はちじ
8:15 / eight o'clock, fifteen minutes ........................................ hachi ji jugo fun .......................... はちじゅうごふん
It's half past eight. .......................................................... Hachi ji han desu. .................................................................はちじはんです。
It's a quarter to eight. / It's fifteen minutes before eight o'clock. ................................................................. Hachi ji jūgo fun mae desu. .................................................................はちじじゅうごふんまえです。
It's 8:50. ........................................................................... Hachi ji gojuppun desu. .................................................................はちじごじゅっぷんです。
It's ten minutes before nine. ........................................... Ku ji juppun mae desu. .................................................................くじゅっぷんまえです。
It's 8 o'clock in the morning. ........................................... Asa hachi ji desu. .................................................................あさはちじです。
It's 3 o'clock in the afternoon. ........................................ Gogo san ji desu. .................................................................ごごさんじです。
It's 8 o'clock at night. ..................................................... Gogo hachi ji desu. .................................................................ごごはちじです。
It's 16:20. ........................................................................... Jūroku ji nijū pun desu. .................................................................じゅろくじにじゅっぷんです。

In Japanese, A.M. is equivalent to "asa" (morning) and "P.M." is equivalent to "gogo"

The suffix "-kan" means "period of time".

The Japanese frequently use a 24 hour clock when referring to transportation schedules.
LESSON 17 - QUESTIONS ........................ JUGYŌ 17 - SHITSUMON ........................ じゅぎょう17 - しつもん

who .................................................... dare ........................................... だれ
whom .................................................. donata ........................................ どなた
Who is it? ........................................... Dare desu ka. .................................. だれですか。
What? ............................................... nan / nani ........................................... なん / なに
What is it? .......................................... Nan desu ka. ....................................... なんですか。
What's that? ....................................... Sore wa nan desu ka. .............................. それはなんですか。
What's this? ....................................... Kore wa nan desu ka. ............................... これはなんですか。
said / did say ..................................... iimashita ........................................ いいました
What did you say? ................................ Nani. /[Anata wa] nani o iimashita ka. ............ なに。/[あなたは]なにをおいましたか。
When? ............................................... itsu ................................................... いつ
At what time? ..................................... nan ji ni ........................................... なんじに
When does the train leave? .................. Densha wa itsu deshun ka. ....................... でんしゃはいつですか。
At what time does the train leave? ....... Densha wa nan ji ni deshun ka. .................. でんしゃはなんじにですか。
Where? ............................................. doko ................................................. どこ
Where is the subway? ......................... Chikatetsu wa doko desu ka. .................... 銚子鉄道はどこですか。
Which? ............................................. dore .................................................. どれ
Which bus is bound for Hiroshima? [L. Hiroshima ................................ Hiroshima yuki no busu wa dore desu ka. ................... ひろしまゆきのバスはどれですか。
bound bus which is.] ................................ ..............................................
why .................................................... naze / dōshite ...................................... なぜ / どうして
why not ............................................. dōshite ........................................... どうして
How? ............................................... dōyatte / dōshite .................................. どうやって / どうして
How are you? [L. Spirit is?] .................. Ogenki desu ka. .................................. おげんきですか。
How many are there? / How many exist.

What day? 

How many days? 

What year? 

How many years? 

How many cars? 

How many kilometers is it? 

How much money is there? / How much money exists?

How much time is there? / How much time exists?

Distance / Range 

About / Approximately 

Approximately what 

How far is it? / Approximately what distance is it?

Do you want a drink? / Is a drink desired? 

What do you want? [L. What is desired?] 

"Nan" is the contracted form of "nani". They both mean "what" although "nani" is more frequently used by itself to ask "what?" (i.e. "nani" = "what" or "what did you say?") Nan is usually used before the copula "desu" to ask what something is. For example, "Nan desu ka." (What is it?) or "Kore wa nan desu ka." (What is this?)

The suffix "-kan" means "period of time".
LESSON 18 - SHOPS ........................................... JUGYŌ 18 - MISE ........................................... じゅぎょう18 - みせ
the store ......................................................... mise ................................................................. みせ
a bakery / a bread store ..................................... panya ........................................................... ぱんや
the butcher shop .............................................. nikuya ............................................................ にくや
medicine ........................................................ kusuri ............................................................... くすり
this pharmacy [L. this medicine store] .................... kono kusuriya ............................................... このくすりや
that supermarket .............................................. sono sūpāmāketto .............................................. そのスーパーまでって
that pastry shop over there ................................. ano kēkiya ..................................................... あのケーキや
a post office ................................................... yūbin kyoku .................................................... ゆうびんきょく
the customs office .......................................... zeikan jimusho .................................................. ぜいかんじむしょ
a laundry / a washing shop ................................. sentakuya ....................................................... せんたくや
the hairdresser / the barber ................................ rihatsu-shi ..................................................... りはつし
a beauty salon ................................................ biyō shitsu ..................................................... びようしつ
that bookshop ................................................ sono honya ..................................................... そのほんや
that department store ...................................... sono depāto ..................................................... そんでばーと
a market ........................................................ ichiba ............................................................... いちば
the police ........................................................ keisatsu ........................................................... けいさつ
the police station ............................................ kōban ........................................................... こうばん
this restaurant ............................................... kono resutoran / kono ryōri ten .......................... このレストラン/このりょうりてん
a cafe / a coffeehouse / a tearoom ....................... kīssaten ........................................................ きっさてん
an agency ....................................................... dairiten .......................................................... だいりてん
a travel agency ............................................... ryokō dairiten ............................................... りょうこうだいりてん
that delicatessen over there ............................... ano derikatessen .......................................... あのでりかてっせん

The suffix "-ya" means "shop" or "store". For example, when the suffix "-ya" is attached to the word "hon" (book) it makes the word "honya" ("bookshop" or "book store").
LESSON 19 - NOUNS .............................................

a town ............................................. machi .............................................まち
da city ............................................. toshi .............................................とし
da country ........................................ kuni .............................................くに
da name ............................................. nanae .............................................なまえ
de the food ........................................ tabemono ...........................................たべもの
da state ............................................. shū .............................................しゅう
de the United States ................................ Amerika ...........................................あめりか
da a gift ............................................. okurimono ........................................おくりもの
da a friend ........................................ tomodachi ...........................................ともだち
da a postage stamp .................................. kitte .............................................きって
da an entrance ..................................... iriguchi ............................................いりぐち
da this exit ......................................... kono deguchi .......................................これでぐち
da this thing / this object ................. kono mono ...........................................このもの
da laundry items / laundry things ................... sentaku mono ...................................せんたくもの
da dirty laundry .................................. kitanai sentaku mono .................................きたないせんたくもの
da a laundromat / a coin laundry ....................... koinrandori ....................................こいんランドリー
da something ..................................... aru mono ...........................................あるもの
da sometimes ....................................... tokidoki ...........................................ときどき
da the other ....................................... hoka .............................................ほか
da the other one .................................. hoka no ...........................................ほかの
da nothing ........................................... nani mo nai ...........................................なにもない
da a person ......................................... hito .............................................ひと
da a man / an adult male person ...................... otoke no hito ...................................おとこのひと
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a woman / an adult female person</td>
<td>onna no hito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a wife</td>
<td>okusan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone's own husband</td>
<td>shujin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone else's husband</td>
<td>go shujin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a child</td>
<td>kodomo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the weather</td>
<td>tenki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an address</td>
<td>jūsho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that word</td>
<td>sono tango</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a consulate</td>
<td>ryōjikan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this beach</td>
<td>kono sunahama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that problem</td>
<td>sono mondai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the cashier's desk / register place</td>
<td>reji gakari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a delay</td>
<td>okure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a house</td>
<td>iie / uchi [less formal]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a plan / a schedule</td>
<td>yotei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a pillow</td>
<td>makura</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

31
### LESSON 20 - ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big / large</td>
<td>おおきい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>ちいさい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>はんたい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's the opposite of big</td>
<td>おおきいのはんたいです</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The opposite of big is small</td>
<td>おおきいのはんたいはちいさいです</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>よい / いい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well</td>
<td>よく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not good / not well</td>
<td>よくありません</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>わるい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>badly</td>
<td>わるく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much / many / a lot of</td>
<td>たくさん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>とても</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not very</td>
<td>あまり</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough</td>
<td>じゅうぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>あつい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warm</td>
<td>あたたかい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>さむい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early</td>
<td>はやい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahead of schedule / early from schedule</td>
<td>よていよりはやく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>おそい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behind schedule / delayed / late from schedule</td>
<td>よていよりおそく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>やさしい / かんたん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>むずかしい</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### JUGYŐ 20 - KEIYŐ SHI TO

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big / large</td>
<td>おおきい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>ちいさい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opposite</td>
<td>はんたい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's the opposite of big</td>
<td>おおきいのはんたいです</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The opposite of big is small</td>
<td>おおきいのはんたいはちいさいです</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>よい / いい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well</td>
<td>よく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not good / not well</td>
<td>よくありません</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>わるい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>badly</td>
<td>わるく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much / many / a lot of</td>
<td>たくさん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>very</td>
<td>とても</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not very</td>
<td>あまり</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough</td>
<td>じゅうぶん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>あつい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warm</td>
<td>あたたかい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>さむい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early</td>
<td>はやい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahead of schedule / early from schedule</td>
<td>よていよりはやく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>おそい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behind schedule / delayed / late from schedule</td>
<td>よていよりおそく</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>やさしい / かんたん</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>むずかしい</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slowly</td>
<td>osoku / yakkuri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td>chikaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nearer</td>
<td>motto chikaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nearest</td>
<td>ichiban chikaku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only</td>
<td>dake / shika</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alone</td>
<td>hitori de</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>together</td>
<td>issho ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>sude ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ready</td>
<td>yoi no dekita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>Furansu no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Eikoku no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American</td>
<td>Amerika no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>Supein no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British</td>
<td>Igirisu no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>Itaria no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>Doitsu no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high [height] / tall</td>
<td>takai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low [height] / short</td>
<td>hikui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>height / stature</td>
<td>sei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tall (referring to other people)</td>
<td>sei ga takai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short (referring to other people)</td>
<td>sei ga hikui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brief time</td>
<td>chotto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>later / afterwards</td>
<td>ato de</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"Yi" is the colloquial alternative to "yoi". All forms of this adjective (meaning "good") are derived from the stem "yoi".
Many Japanese adjectives which end in "-i" can be made into adverbs by changing the "-i" to "-ku". This is similar to adding "-ly" in English. For example, the adjective "warui" (bad) changes to the adverb "waruku" (badly). Likewise, "slow" (oso) changes to "slowly" (osoku) and "beautiful" (utsukushi) changes to "beautifully" (utsukushiku). (Remember, "-i" = "ii".)

### LESSON 21 - VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to be/to be equal or equivalent to</td>
<td>desu [de aru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to have/to be/to exist (for inanimate objects and plants)</td>
<td>arimasu [aru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to have/to be/to exist (for animate objects)</td>
<td>imasu [iru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to want/to desire (for objects only)</td>
<td>hoshigarimasu [hoshigaru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to want to do something</td>
<td>-tai [-tagaru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to go</td>
<td>ikimasu [iku]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to want to go</td>
<td>ikitai [ikitagaru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to do/to make</td>
<td>shimasu [sru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to eat</td>
<td>tabemasu [taberu]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to want to eat</td>
<td>tabetai [tabetagaru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to drink</td>
<td>nomimasu [nomu]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to want to drink</td>
<td>nomitai [nomitagaru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to buy</td>
<td>kaimasu [kau]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to sell</td>
<td>urimasu [uru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to rent from</td>
<td>karimasu [kariru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to rent [to]</td>
<td>kashimasu [kasu]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to pay/to pay for</td>
<td>haraimasu [hararu]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to see/to look at</td>
<td>mimasu [miru]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to look for</td>
<td>sagashimasu [sagasu]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to know/to learn about</td>
<td>shirimasu [shiru]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
to know / to understand こころえます [こころえる]
to understand わかります [わかる]
to come きます [くる]
to write かきます [かく]
to close (by itself) しまります [しまう]
to close (one's shop) / to fold たたみます [たたむ]
to shut とじます [とじる]
to open あけます [あける]
to learn ならいます [ならう]
to learn / to remember おぼえます [おぼえる]
to arrive つきます [つく]
to go out でかけます [でかける]
to leave something behind のこします [のこす]
to leave a place / to depart しゅっぱつします [しゅっぱつする]
to say いいます [いう]
to speak / to talk はなします [はなす]
to lose an object おとします [おとす]
to lose a contest まけます [まける]
to fly とびます [とぶ]
to steal ぬすみます [ぬすむ]
to study / to do studying ぺんきょうをします [ぺんきょうをする]
to stop とめます [とめる]
to like このみます [このむ] / すきです [すく]
to love / to do or make love あいします [あいる]
to live / to be alive いきます [いかる]
The English verbs in this lesson are shown in their infinitive forms. The Japanese verbs which are recorded on the tape are in their conjugated forms. The conjugations shown in this lesson are the formal, indicative, affirmative forms. This form corresponds most closely to the English present tense as in "I eat." (Watashi wa tabemasu.) and "He eats." (Kare wa tabemasu.)

The verbs which are in brackets are the dictionary forms. Dictionaries will usually list only the dictionary forms of verbs. In Japanese, the dictionary form is not the same as the infinitive. (In English dictionaries, verbs are listed in their infinitive forms without the "to").

The Japanese word "desu" is called a "copula" and is usually translated as "am", "is", or "are". It is the conjugated form of the verb "de aru". "De aru" means "to be" or "to be equal or equivalent to".
LESSON 22 - PREPOSITIONAL .......................... JUGYŌ 22 - ZENCHI SHI NO .......................... じゅぎょう22 - ぜんちしの

PHRASES .......................... FURĒZU .......................................................... ふれーず

I'm going to Tokyo. / Someone is going to Tokyo. .......................................................... Tōkyō e ikimasu. .......................................................... とうきょうへいきます。

It's in Tokyo. .......................................................... Tōkyō ni arimasu. .......................................................... とうきょうにあります。

It's as far as Tokyo. .......................................................... Tōkyō made desu. .......................................................... とうきょうまでです。

It's at the station. .......................................................... Eki ni arimasu. .......................................................... えきにあります。

It's from Hokkaidō. / It comes from Hokkaidō. .......................................................... Hokkaidō kara kimasu. .......................................................... ほっかいどうからきます。

I sleep with a pillow. / Someone sleeps with a pillow. .......................................................... Makura de nemasu. .......................................................... まくらでねます。

Someone sleeps without a pillow. .......................................................... Makura nashi de nemasu. .......................................................... まくらなしでねます。

It's for the car. .......................................................... Jidōsha no tame ni desu. .......................................................... じどうしゃのためにです。

It's by the table. .......................................................... Tēburu no soba ni arimasu. .......................................................... てーぶるのそばにあります。

It's near the table. .......................................................... Tēburu no chikaku ni arimasu. .......................................................... てーぶるのちかくにあります。

It's far from the table. .......................................................... Tēburu kara tōi desu. .......................................................... てーぶるからとおいです。

I'm going by train. .......................................................... Densha de ikimasu. .......................................................... でんしゃでいきます。

It's 100 yen per dollar. / One dollar is 100 yen. .......................................................... Ichidōru hyaku yen desu. .......................................................... いちどるひゃくえんです。

It's on the table. .......................................................... Tēburu no ue ni arimasu. .......................................................... てーぶるのうえにあります。

It's over the table. .......................................................... Tēburu no ue no hō ni arimasu. .......................................................... てーぶるのうえのほうにあります。

It's under the car. .......................................................... Jidōsha no shita no hō ni arimasu. .......................................................... じどうしゃのしたのほうにあります。

It's below the window. .......................................................... Mado no shita ni arimasu. .......................................................... まどのしたにあります。

It's in the car. .......................................................... Jidōsha no naka ni arimasu. .......................................................... じどうしゃのなかにあります。

It's inside the house. .......................................................... Ie no naka ni arimasu. .......................................................... いえのなかにあります。

It's within the city. .......................................................... Tōshi no hani inai ni arimasu. .......................................................... としのはんいないにあります。

It's outside the window. .......................................................... Mado no sotogawa ni arimasu. .......................................................... まどのそとがわにあります。

It's in front of the post office. .......................................................... Yūbin kyoku no mae ni arimasu. .......................................................... ゆびんきょくのまえにあります。
In English, prepositions are words such as "above", "below", "to", "at", "for" etc, that describe relation, location or position of something. In English, these words appear before the nouns to which they refer, hence the name "preposition". Prepositions do not exist as such in Japanese. In Japanese, prepositional functions are expressed with "particles" (also called "relationals" or sometimes "postpositions" because they follow the words which they refer to.)

There are many ways in which Japanese particles function as the equivalent of English prepositions. In a phrase such as "Tōkyō e", the particle "e" simply means "to". The particle "e" is used with verbs of motion such as "go", "come", "return" etc. The particle "ni" can have several meanings such as "at", "in", "on", "to" etc. Hence the phrases "Tōkyō ni" (in Tōkyō) and "eki ni" ("at the station" or "in the station"). Phrases showing location such
as "in the car" (jidōsha no naka ni) are formed by linking the noun "jidōsha" (car) to the noun "naka" ("interior" or "inside") with the possessive particle "no" (',s), and then the particle "ni" comes at the end. For example:

jidōsha no
(car's)  naka
(interior)  ni
(in)  = "in the car"

tēburu no
(table's)  ue
(top)  ni
(on)  = "on the table"

tēburu no
(table's)  mukō
(other side)  ni
(at)  = "at the other side of the table"
  = "across the table"

LESSON 23 - JUGYŌ 23 - ZENCHI SHI NO DAIMEISHI じゅぎょう23 - ぜんちしのだいまいし
PREPOSITIONAL PRONOUNS
It's for me. Watashi no tame ni desu. わたしのためにです。
It's for you. Anata no tame ni desu. あなたのためにです。
It's for him. Kare no tame ni desu. かれのためにです。
It's for her. Kanojo no tame ni desu. かのじょのためにです。
It's for that person. Ano hito no tame ni desu. あのひとのためにです。
It's for it. Sore no tame ni desu. それのためにです。
It's for us. Watashitachi no tame ni desu. わたしたちのためにです。
It's for you guys. Anatagata no tame ni desu. あなたがたのためにです。
It's for everyone. Minasan no tame ni desu. みなさんのためにです。
It's for them. (all males or mixed) Karera no tame ni desu. かれらのためにです。
It's for them. (all females) Kanojotachi no tame ni desu. かのじょたちのためにです.
それらのためにです。
あのひとたちのためにです。
かれらはわたしごいっしょにいきます。
かれらはあなたといっしょに
いきません。
みんなからです。
わたしたちのまえにあります
ろくじいこうです。
ぱーてぃーのあとです。
かれらのまえにあります。
あなたがたのそばにあります。
わたしたちのうしろにあります。
あのひとのうしろにあります。
それをとっていきます。

Pronouns are words which take the place of nouns. Prepositional pronouns are pronouns (object pronouns) which follow prepositions. This lesson shows how English prepositional pronouns are expressed in Japanese. In English, subject pronouns such as "I", "you", "he", "she", "it", "we" and "they" are usually different from prepositional pronouns such as "me", "you", "him", "her", "it", "us" and "them". In Japanese, the same pronouns are used for both cases.

Personal pronouns are not used very often in Japanese. Japanese people prefer not to use personal pronouns if the meaning of a sentence can be understood from the context. Instead of saying "you" (anata), "he" (kare), or "she" (kanojo), the person’s name followed by "san" is often used instead. Other terms are often used in place of personal pronouns as follows:

anatagata (you people, you guys)  → mina (everyone, you all)
kare (he, him), kanojo (she, her)  → ano hito (that person)
kareta, kanojotachi (they, them)  → ano hitotachi (those people)
### LESSON 24 - POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my suitcase / my suitcases</td>
<td>watashi no sütsukësu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your suitcase / your suitcases</td>
<td>anata no sütsukësu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his ticket / his tickets</td>
<td>kare no kippu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her money</td>
<td>kanojo no okane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that person's water</td>
<td>ano hito no mizu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our mother</td>
<td>watashitachi no okāsan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your children (plural)</td>
<td>anatagata no kodomotachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>everyone's books</td>
<td>minasan no hon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their house</td>
<td>karera no ie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>those people's dog</td>
<td>ano hototachi no inu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the students' names</td>
<td>gakusei no nanae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my male friend</td>
<td>watashi no otoko no tomodachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my female friend</td>
<td>watashi no onna no tomodachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our younger sister</td>
<td>watashitachi no imōto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my older sister</td>
<td>watashi no onēsan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that person's younger brother</td>
<td>ano hito no otōto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her older brother</td>
<td>kanojo no onisan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our wives</td>
<td>watashitachi no okusan-tachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their wives</td>
<td>karera no okusan-tachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their wives' purses</td>
<td>karera no okusan-tachi no saifu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our husbands</td>
<td>watashitachi no shujintachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their husbands' wallets</td>
<td>kanojora no shujin-tachi no saifu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that person's car</td>
<td>ano hito no jidōsha</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
those people's cars .................................................. ano hitotachi no jidōsha ...........................................あなたのひとりたちの車
at your house .................................................................................................................. anata no iede あなたのいえで
to your house .................................................................................................................. anata no iede あなたのいえへ
his address .................................................................................................................... kare no jūshō かれの住所
your family ..................................................................................................................... anata no kazoku あなたの家族
my mother ....................................................................................................................... watashi no haha わたしのは

In English, possessive adjectives are pronouns which show possession such as "my", "our", "their" etc. Some texts refer to these as possessive pronouns. The equivalent in Japanese is expressed with a personal pronoun followed by the particle "no" followed by the object possessed. Since singular and plural Japanese nouns are identical, no distinction is made as to whether one item is possessed or whether several items are possessed. For example, "karera no ie" means both "their house" and "their houses".
CONJUNCTIONS AND SIMILAR WORDS

and ................................................................. to ................................................................. と
or ................................................................. matawa / ka / soretomo ................................................................. または / か / それとも
also / and also ................................................................. mo mata ................................................................. もまだ...
also / too ................................................................. mo ................................................................. も
but ................................................................. dakedo / shikashi / demo ................................................................. だけど / しかし / でも
but / however / though ................................................................. keredomou ................................................................. けれども
maybe / perhaps ................................................................. tabun ................................................................. たぶん
because ................................................................. naze naraba ................................................................. なぜならば
then (in that case) ................................................................. sore dewa ................................................................. それでは
and then [as in "first do this and then do that"] ................................................................. soshite ................................................................. そして
if / in case ................................................................. moshi...naraba ................................................................. もし...ならば
If it rains tomorrow... ................................................................. ashita moshi ame naraba ................................................................. あしたもしあめならば...
if it rains tomorrow, I'll go ................................................................. Ashita moshi ame naraba ikimasu. あしたもしあめならばいきます。
First I'll go to the station. ................................................................. Saisho ni eki e ikimasu. さいしょにえきへいきます。
...and then I'll go to the bank. ................................................................. soshite ginkō e ikimasu. そしてがんこうへいきます。
therefore ................................................................. dakara ................................................................. だから
however ................................................................. dakedomu ................................................................. だけど
nevertheless ................................................................. sore nimo kakawarazu ................................................................. それにもかかわらず
LESSON 26 - じゅぎょう26 -

SENTENCES AND PHRASES, GENERAL

Japanese language ............................... Nihongo ............................... にほんご

He speaks Japanese. / Someone speaks Japanese ............................... Nihongo o hanashimasu ............................... にほんごをはなします。

I speak Japanese. ............................... [Watashi wa] nihongo ohanashimasu. ............................... [わたしは]にほんごをはなします。

I do not speak Japanese. ............................... [Watashi wa] nihongo ohanashimasen. ............................... [わたしは]にほんごをはなしません。


/ Do you speak Japanese?

Do you speak Japanese? ............................... [Anata wa] nihongo o hanashimasu ka. ............................... [あなたは]にほんごをはなしますか。

a little ............................... sukoshi ............................... すこし

from here to Yokohama ............................... koko kara Yokohama made ............................... ここからよこはまで

from here to there ............................... koko kara soko made ............................... ここからそここまで

I am at the train station. / I, at the train station, exist. ............................... [Watashi wa] eki ni imasu. ............................... [わたしは]えきにいます。

I am on the platform. / I, on the platform, exist. ............................... [Watashi wa] hōmu ni imasu. ............................... [わたしは]はーもにいます。

That person is in the train. ............................... Ano hito wa densha no naka ni imasu. ............................... あのひとはでんしゃのなかにいます。

My suitcase is inside the train. / My suitcase, inside, the train exists. ............................... Watashi no sūtsukēsu wa densha no naka ni arimasu. ............................... わたしのすーつくせーすはでんしゃのなかにあります。


I study Japanese. ............................... [Watashi wa] nihongo o benkyō shimasu. ............................... [わたしは]にほんごをべんきょうします。

I'm going to Tokyo. ............................... [Watashi wa] Tōkyō e ikimasu. ............................... [わたしは] とうきょうへいきます。

Stop! ............................... Tomatte. ............................... とまって。

Stop here please. ............................... Koko ni tomatte kudasai. ............................... ここにとまってください。

No problem. / It's no problem. ............................... Mondai nai desu. ............................... もんだいないです。

It's O.K. ............................... Daijōbu desu. ............................... だいじょうぶです。

I can. / I am able to. ............................... [Watashi wa] dekimasu. ............................... [わたしは]できます。
May I? [L. Even if I do it, is it good?] ................................ Shite mo ii desu ka. .................................................. してもいいですか。
My name is Hank .................................................. Watashi no name wa HANKU desu. わたしたちの名前はハンクです。
What’s your name? .................................................. Anata no name wa nan desu ka. あなたの名前はなんですか。
a country ......................................................... kuni / okuni ........................................................... くに / おに
Where are you from? / Where is your country? .......... Okuni wa doko desu ka. ........................................... おにはどこですか。

[L. Country where is?] ........................................... Amerika kara kimashita. ........................... ありきりかからきました。
I’m from the United States / I came from the United States. Watashi wa Amerika kara kimashita. わたしたちはアメリカからきました。
There is... / There are... / There exists... (for ... ga arimasu. [or "... wa arimasu."]) ...........................があります。 [...はあります。]
inanimate objects and plants.)
There was... / There were... / There existed... (for ... ga arimashita. [or ... "wa arimashita."]) ...........................がありました。 [...はありました。]
inanimate objects and plants.)
There is enough water. ........................................... Mizu ga jibun arimasu. ........................... みずがじゅうぶんあります。
There are enough apples ........................................ Ringo ga jibun arimasu. ........................... りんごがじゅうぶんあります。
There was a party yesterday. ................................. kinô patty ga arimashita. ........................... きのうはパーティーがありました。
There is... / There are... / There exists... (for ... ga imasu. [or "... wa imasu"] ........................... ございます。 [...はいます]
animate objects)
here was... / There were... / There existed... (for ... ga imashita [or ". wa imashita" ] ........................... いました。 [...はいました。]
animate objects)
There are people at the beach. .............................. Sunahama ni hitobito ga imasu. ........................... すなはまにひとびとがいます。
There were people at the bank. .............................. Ginkô ni hitobito ga imashita. ........................... ぎんこうにひとびとがいました。
I like to eat. .................................................... Taberu koto ga suki desu. .............................. たべることが好きです。
I love this book. .............................................. [Watashi wa] kono hon ga daisuki desu. ........................... [わたしは] このほんがだいすきです。
I love my mother. .......................................................... [Watashi wa] haha o aishiteimasu. ........................................... [わたしは] はを愛しています。
Do you like the old city? ........................................... [Anata wa] furuimachi ga suki desu ka. ............................ [あなたは]ふるいちが好きですか。
departure ............................................................... shuppatsu .......................................................... しゅっぱつ
I am leaving. / I'm making a departure. .................. [Watashi wa] shuppatsu shimasu. ............................................ [わたしは] しゅっぱつします。
Excuse me. (to pass through a crowd or to get someone's attention) ...................................................... Sumimasen. .......................................................... すみません。
Excuse me. / I'm sorry .............................................. Gomen nasai .......................................................... ごめんなさい。
Excuse me. (entering someone's house) ..................... Gomen kudasai. .......................................................... ごめんください。
I have a ticket. / (I) possess a ticket ....................... [Watashi wa] kippu o motteimasu. ............................................. [わたしは] きっぷをもっています。
Of course! ............................................................. Mochiron .............................................................. もちろん。
Certainly. ............................................................. Atarimae. ............................................................. あたりまえ。
English language ...................................................... eigo ................................................................. えいご
Do you have a menu in English? [L. English menu exists?] Eigo no menyū ga arimasu ka. ........................................... えいごのめにメニューがありますか。
Let's go! ............................................................... Ikimashō! ............................................................. いきましょう！
How does one say...? ............................................... nan to iimasu ka. .................................................... なんといいますか。
How does one say "airplane" in Japanese? ............... "Airplane" wa Nihongo de nan to iimasu ka. .................. "Airplane"はにほんごでなんといいますか。
Watch out! / Be careful! ........................................... Abunai ............................................................. あぶない。
Speak slowly, please ............................................... Yukkuri hanashite kudasai. ........................................... ゆっくりはなしてください。
Repeat, please. ..................................................... Kurikaeshite kudasai. .............................................. くりかえしてください。
It's him. ............................................................. Kare desu. .......................................................... 彼です。
The suffix "-go" means "language" as in "Nihongo" (Japanese language).

The verb "imasu" (to exist, to have, to be) is used when speaking about animate objects (except plants). The verb "arimasu" means essentially the same thing, but is used when referring to inanimate objects or plants.

Note that this lesson is the first time that the particles "ga" and "wa" have been used together in the same sentence. The difference between "ga" and "wa" is subtle but important. As was mentioned earlier, particles always follow the words they mark or identify. "Ga" marks the grammatical subject of a sentence, and "wa" marks the topic of a sentence. (In English, no grammatical distinction is usually made between the topic and the subject.) The particle "wa" which marks the topic always precedes the particle "ga" which marks the grammatical subject. The topic is what the conversation is about, and the subject is what is being emphasized in the sentence. In English, emphasis is usually done by raising the tone or level of voice on certain words. In Japanese, this emphasis is done by placing the particle "ga" after the word or group of words being emphasized, thereby making it the grammatical subject. Since the topic is something the conversation is already talking about, it can often be left out completely. (This is why several of the sentences in this lesson show topics in brackets or parentheses.) If the conversation makes it clear what the subject is, it can be left out also. However, if there is any question as to what the topic or subject is, then they will be used in the sentence and identified with the appropriate particle. For example:

I like "books". = Watashi wa hon "ga" suki desu.

(Speaking of what I like, I like books.)

The rules for word order in Japanese are very different from English. In English, word order often determines which word is the subject and which is the object. For example, "John likes dogs." and "Dogs like John." have very different meanings. In Japanese, particles must follow the words they mark (subject, object, topic etc.) and the verb goes at the end.
LESSON 27 - .......................... JUGYŌ 27 - ..........................

HITEI NO BUN TO FUREZU

SENTENCES AND PHRASES, NEGATIVE

I want a ticket. / Ticket is desired. ........................................ [Watashi wa] kippu ga hoshii desu. [わたしが きっぷがほしいです。]
I do not want a ticket. / Ticket desire does not exist. ........ [Watashi wa] kippu o hoshiku arimasen. [わたしが きっぷをほしくありません。
He doesn't want a ticket. / That person doesn't want a ticket. [Ano hito wa kippu o hoshigarimasen. あのひとはきっぷをおしがりません。]
Michael doesn't want a credit card. .......................... Maikerusan wa kurejitto kādo o hoshigarimasen. まいけるさんがくれじっとかードを ほしがりません。
I don't want it. / We don't want it. / They don't want it. .......................... Hoshigarimasen. ほしがりません。
I would like a drink. ........................................ [Watashi wa] nomimono ga hoshii desu. [わたしが飲みもののがほしいです。]
I would not like dessert. ........................................ Dezāto wa hoshiku arimasen. [わたしがデザートをほしくありません。
I have a gift. ........................................ [Watashi wa] okurimono o motteimasu. [わたしが おくりものをおとっています。
I don't have a gift. ........................................ [Watashi wa] okurimono o motteimasen. [わたしが おくりものをおとめていません。
This is a backpack. ........................................ Kore wa ryūkku sakkusu desu. これはりゅっくくさっくすです。
This is not a backpack. ........................................ Kore wa ryūkku sakkusu ja arimasen. これはりゅっくくさっくすじゃありません。
That is not a Japanese bath. ........................................ Sore wa furō ja arimasen. それはふろうじゃありません。
That over there is not a bank. ........................................ Are wa ginkō ja arimasen. あのぐらいはぎんこうじゃありません。
You have a passport. / Someone has a passport. ........... Pasūpōto ga arimasu. パスポートがあります。
You don't have a passport. / Someone doesn't have a passport. .......................... Pasūpōto ga arimasen. パスポートがありません。

Passport exists.

Passport doesn't exist.

It's not a passport. ........................................ Pasūpōto ja arimasen. / [Pasūpōto dewa arimasen.] パスポートじゃありません。/ [パスポートではありません。]
I know. ........................................ [Watashi wa] shittemasu. [わたしが しってます。
I don't know. ........................................ [Watashi wa] shitteimasen. [わたしが しっていません。

49
I understand. [Watashi wa] wakarimasu. [わたしは] わかります。
I don't understand. [Watashi wa] wakarimasen. [わたしは] わかりません。
I speak English. [Watashi wa] eigo o hanashimasu. [わたしは] 英語を話します。
I don't speak French. [Watashi wa] Furansugo o hanashimasen. [わたしは] フランス語を話しません。
Those people drink beer. Ano hitotachi wa biru o nomimasu. あのひとたちはびるをのみます。
Those people don't drink beer. Ano hitotachi wa biru o nomimasen. あのひとたちはびるをのみません。
Mr. Smith eats appetizers. Sumisu san wa zensai o tabemasu. すみすさんはぜんさいをたべます。
Mr. Smith doesn't eat appetizers. Sumisu san wa zensai o tabemasen. すみすさんはぜんさいをたべません。
I like rice wine. Osake ga suki desu. お酒が好きです。
I don't like rice wine. Osake ga suki ja arimasen. お酒が好きじゃありません。
There is some water at the store. Mise ni mizu ga arimasu. みせにみずがあります。
There isn't any water at the store. Mise ni mizu ga arimasen. みせにみずがありません。
There isn't any wind. Kaze ga arimasu. かぜがあります。
Yes, it is. / Yes, it's so. Hai, sō desu. はい、そうです。
No, it's not. Iie, sō dewa arimasen. いいえ、そうではありません。
Good, isn't it? / Sounds good. Ii, desu ne. いい、ですね。
Is that right? / Isn't it so? Sō desu ka. そうですか。

"hoshigarimasu" = "hoshi" + "ga" + "arimasu" = "desire exists"

In Japanese, verbs have negative forms and affirmative forms. For the formal present tense (present indicative formal for most examples thus far) the negative is formed by changing the ending "-masu" to "-masen".

The negative of the copula "desu" is "dewa arimasen" or it's contracted form "ja arimasen". The negative of "ga arimasu" is "ga arimasen".


LESSON 28 - WANTING TO DO SOMETHING

I want to eat. [Watashi wa] tabetai desu.
I want to drink. [Watashi wa] nomitai desu.
That person wants to go. Ano hito wa ikitai desu.
Those people want to look. Ano hitotachi wa mitai desu.
John wants to know. John san wa shirai desu.
Mr. Yamada wants to buy a ticket. Yamada san wa kippu o kaitai desu.
We want to understand. Watashitachi wa wakarai desu.
Mr. Yamada and Mr. Smith want to come. Yamada san to Sumisu san wa kitaidesu.
Mr. Yamada wants to go to Tokyo. Yamada san wa Tōkyō e ikitai desu.
I want to shut the window. [Watashi wa] mado o shimetai desu.
They want to arrive early. / Those people want to arrive early. Ano hitotachi wa hayaku tsukaitai desu.
I want to go out tomorrow. [Watashi wa] ashieta dekaitai desu.
That person wants to do it. / That person wants to do it. Ano hito wa sore o shitai desu.
Jana wants to study. Jana san wa benkyō shitai desu.
I don't want to eat. Watashi wa tabetaku arimasen.
I don't want to drink. [Watashi wa] nomitaku arimasen.
That person doesn't want to go. Ano hito wa ikitaku arimasen.
Those people don't want to look. Ano hitotachi wa mitaku arimasen.
Mr. Yamada doesn't want to know. Yamada san wa shiruku arimasen.
Doctor Yamada doesn't want to buy a ticket. Yamada sensei wa kippu o kaitaku arimasen.
I want to sleep. .................................................. [Watashi wa] netai desu .............................................. [わたしたい] ねたいです。
I don't want to sleep now. .................................. [Watashi wa] ima netaku arimasen .............................. [わたしたい] いまねたくありません。
I want to travel. ................................................. [Watashi wa] ryokō shitai desu ................................. [わたしたい] りょこうしたいです。
I don't want to travel. ......................................... [Watashi wa] ryokō shitaku arimasen .......................... [わたしたい] りょこうしたくありません。
I want to drink this beer. .................................... [Watashi wa] kono biru o nomitai desu ............... [わたしたい] このビールをのみたいです。
I don't want to drink this milk. ............................ [Watashi wa] kono gyūnyū o nomitaku arimasen ........ [わたしたい] このぎゅうにゅうをのみたくありません。

Professor Yamada wants to sell his car. ............... Yamada sensei wa kare no jidōsha o uritai desu. ...... やまださんせいはかれのじどうしゃをうりたいです。
He doesn't want to sell his house. ....................... [Kare wa] kare no ie o uritaku arimasen ................. [かれは] かれのいえをうりたくありません。

Wanting to do something is different from wanting an object. In English, wanting to do something is expressed by the word "want" followed by the infinitive form of a verb. (An infinitive is a verb preceded by "to". The "to" is called the "sign" of the infinitive.) In Japanese, the same idea is expressed by changing the ending of the verb. The ending "-masu" is replaced with "-tai desu". To form the negative, "-masu" is replaced with "-taku" and "arimasen" is added.
FORMING QUESTIONS

He is big.
Kare wa ōkii desu.

Is he big?
Kare wa ōkii desu ka.

to have / to possess
motte imasu [motte iru]

You have a car.
Anata wa kuruma o motte imasu.

Do you have a car?
Anata wa kuruma o motte imasu ka.

The car is at the house.
Jidōsha wa uchi ni arimasu.

Is the car at the house?
Jidōsha wa uchi ni arimasu ka.

It's too big.
ōki sugi desu.

Is it too big?
ōki sugi desu ka.

It's windy. / The wind is strong.
Kaze ga tsuyoi desu.

Is it windy? / Is the wind strong?
Kaze ga tsuyoi desu ka.

It's far from here.
Koko kara to i desu.

Is it far from here?
Koko kara to i desu ka.

Mr. Yamada, do you want a peach?
Yamada san, momo ga hoshii desu ka.

Mr. Yamada, do you want some grapes?
Yamada san, budō ga hoshii desu ka.

It's a travel agency. / That's a travel agency.
Sore wa ryokō dairiten desu.

Is that a travel agency?
Sore wa ryokō dairiten desu ka.

What is it? / What's that?
Sore wa nan desu ka.

There is a room with a shower.
Shawā tsuki no heya ga arimasu.

Is there a room with a shower?
Shawā tsuki no heya ga arimasu ka.
LESSON 30 - ................................. JUGYŌ 30 - .................................

HAVING TO DO SOMETHING

I have to (as in "must")...-nakereba naranai

I have to eat. / I must eat. (Watashi wa) tabenakereba naranai.

I have to eat something. (Watashi wa) tabemono o tabenakereba naranai.

I have to drink some water. (Watashi wa) mizu o nomanakereba naranai.

I have to buy a car. (Watashi wa) kuruma o kawanakereba naranai.

I must sell my house. (Watashi no) watashi no ie o uranakereba naranai.

I must rent a car tomorrow. Ashita (Watashi wa) kuruma o karinakereba naranai.

My wife has to pay the bill. (Watashi no) okusan ga okanjo o harawana-kereba naranai.

My husband has to learn Japanese. (Watashi no) shuujin ga Nihongo o narawa nakereba naranai.

Mr. Yamada has to do it. / Mr. Yamada has to make it. Yamada san ga shinakereba naranai.

My son has to arrive the day after tomorrow. Asatte watashi no musuko wa tsukanakereba naranai.

I have to leave tonight. / I have to depart tonight. Konban (Watashi wa) shuppatsu shinakereba naranai.

Tim and Paul have to go to Tokyo. Timu san to Pōru san wa Tōkyō e ikanakereba naranai.
I don't have to buy a car. ................................. Watashi wa kuruma o kawanakutemo ii desu. yards. わたしはくるまをかわなくてもいいです。
He doesn't have to sell his house. ............................. Kare wa kare no ie o uranakutemo ii desu. 、かれはかれの家をうらなくてもいいです。
My daughter doesn't have to pay the bill. ............... Watashi no musume wa okanjō o harawakenakutemo ii desu. 、わたしのもうめはおかんじょうを

I have to stop now. ........................................ Watashi wa ima tomaranakereba naranai. 、わたしはいまとまらなければならない。
I don't have to stop now. ................................ Watashi wa ima tomaranakutemo ii desu. 、わたしはいまとまらなくて也好いです。
Jim has to study this afternoon. ................................. Jimu san wa gogo benkyōshi nakereba naranai. 、じむさんはごとべんきょうしなければならない。
Jim doesn't have to study this evening. ......................... Jimu san wa gogo benkyōshi nakutemo ii desu. 、じむさんはごとべんきょうしなくて也好いです。

The phrase "-nakutemo ii desu" means "don't have to" or "doesn't have to". Literally it means something like "even if (someone) doesn't do it, it's good (OK)."
LESSON 31 - SENTENCES AND PHRASES, GENERAL

How old are you? .................................................. Ikutsu desu ka. / Nan sai desu ka.
Show me, please. ...................................................... Misete kudasai.
Slow down please. [L. Slowly go, please.] .................... Yukkuri itte kudasai.
I want to go .......................................................... Ikitai desu.
other / another ....................................................... Hoka no
something else .......................................................... Hoka no nani ka
Do you have something else? ..................................... Hoka no nani ka ga arimasu ka
I don't know that word. .......................................... Sono tango wa shirimasen.
meaning ................................................................. Imi
It means................................................................. Imi desu.
It means "airplane". ................................................ "Airplane" to iu imi desu.
What does that mean? (referring to something) ............. Dō iu imi desu ka.
which was said What does "that" mean? (referring to a sign or object) Sore wa dō iu imi desu ka.
What's that? [referring to an object] .............................. Sore wa nan desu ka.
Mr. Yamada needs a ticket. ......................................... Yamada san wa kippu ga hitsuyō desu.
I need a ticket. / Ticket is necessary .......................... [Watashi wa] kippu ga hitsuyō desu.
Where is John's suitcase? ........................................ John san no sütsukēsu wa doko desu ka.

YAKUNI TATSUFURÉZU

じゅぎょう31 - やくにたつふれーず

いくつですか。/ なんさいですか。
どこにすんでいますか。
みせてください。
ゆっくりいってください。
いきたいです。
ほかの
ほかのなにか
ほかのなにかがありますか。
そのままごはしりません。
いいみです。
いいみです。
"Airplane" といういいみです。
どういったいいみですか。
そうだといいみですか。
それはなんですか。
yamadasan wa kippu ga hitsuyō desu。
[watashi wa] kippu ga hitsuyō desu。
john san no sütsukēsu wa doko desu ka。

56
Learn In Your Car®

JAPANESE

by Henry N. Raymond

LEVEL TWO

Learn In Your Car is the only language learning system designed to teach a foreign language in your car as you drive, without the aid of a textbook. This booklet contains the entire recorded text for your reference so that you can see how the words are spelled. This booklet also contains additional explanations which will be helpful to you if you have trouble understanding some of the concepts.

ABOUT THIS COURSE

Learn In Your Car – Japanese, Level Two is a continuation of Learn in Your Car Japanese, Level One. Level Two begins where Level One ends. Level One is designed and organized primarily with the traveler in mind. Level Two continues with more ideas, concepts, and vocabulary that are useful to the traveler, but introduces more complex vocabulary and grammar. The following guidelines are used:

1. The basic premise is that communicating in a language requires learning words, phrases, and sentences; but you can't learn to communicate effectively in a language unless you know the individual meaning of each word.

2. The emphasis is on communication. Words, phrases, or sentences can be used to communicate. It is not always necessary to use a complete sentence to convey a thought.

3. It teaches the way a child learns. Children start by learning one-word sentences, then two-word sentences, etc.

4. It teaches the most important things first. This course does not use your valuable memory to store useless words. The
important words you need to survive and get around are taught first. Grammar is introduced in the later lessons, but it is taught with examples rather than rules.

5. No more than one new word is introduced at a time. This means you won't hear a sentence or a phrase and wonder which sound corresponds to which word. (Various forms of previously introduced verbs are used along with new words.)

6. No textbook is required. The fact that no more than one new word is introduced at a time enables you to use the CDs effectively without referring to a textbook. The CDs are designed to be used without a textbook so that you can use them while driving a car or while doing other things which require similar amounts of concentration.

7. Literal (word-for-word) translations are used as much as possible. This enables you to understand how a sentence or phrase is constructed and what the individual words mean.

HOW TO USE

"LEARN IN YOUR CAR – JAPANESE"

The lessons start immediately at the beginning of Disc One with no introduction so that you don't have to listen to the same introduction over and over again.

Simply start the first disc and play through the first lesson. For each expression, you will hear the English version followed by a pause, then the Japanese translation followed by a pause, then the Japanese translation a second time followed by a third pause. At first, you will only be able to imitate the Japanese words in the two pauses after the Japanese translations (the second and third pauses). As you learn and progress, you will be able to recall and recite the Japanese version during the first pause before you hear the first Japanese translation. Be sure to speak the Japanese expressions out loud. The rate at which you learn will be significantly slower if you do not speak the Japanese expressions aloud.

Play the first lesson several times until you learn most of it. Then start playing the first followed by the second until you learn most of the second. As you progress, keep adding lessons. Always go back to the beginning to reinforce the material you have already learned. (As you progress through the material, you may want to restart at some place other than the very beginning of the first disc. This is fine as long as you
know all the material ahead of your starting point. Later lessons are designed with the assumption that you already know the material in earlier lessons.)

NOTES ABOUT THE TEXT

• Words which are underlined in phrases in the text have the same meaning in both English and Japanese. When a new word is introduced, it will usually be underlined.
• Literal translations are in parentheses with an “L.” such as: “(L. This is a literal translation)”
• Words in brackets [like this] are understood or indicate context, but are not heard on the discs.

NOTES ABOUT THE CDs

• The CD format, with each lesson on a separate track, allows you to instantly target the exact lesson you wish to review. The disc and track numbers for each lesson are listed in the Table of Contents.
• The Japanese and English translations are on separate channels. If you wish to hear only the Japanese translations, simply adjust the balance control of your CD player so that you hear only the Japanese version.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to thank Jana Walker, Seiko Mikami, Yutaka Doi, and Noriko Ochiai, who helped to make this audio production possible.

– Henry N. Raymond

Published and distributed by
Penton Overseas, Inc.
© 2002, 1994 Penton Overseas. All rights reserved.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**Disc One, Tracks 1-12:**
1: Lesson 32 . . . Sentences and Phrases, General
2: Lesson 33 . . . Sentences with Negative Adjectives
3: Lesson 34 . . . Sentences and Phrases, Transportation
4: Lesson 35 . . . Sentences and Phrases, Money
5: Lesson 36 . . . Sentences and Phrases, Hotel
6: Lesson 37 . . . Sentences and Phrases, Getting Around
7: Lesson 38 . . . Sentences and Phrases, Directions
8: Lesson 39 . . . Sentences and Phrases, Conversation
9: Lesson 40 . . . The Verb "Desu" (To Be) (Present Tense)
10: Lesson 41 . . . The Verbs "Imasu" and "Arimasu" (To Be or To Exist) (Present Tense)
11: Lesson 42 . . . To "Have" or To "Own" Something
12: Lesson 43 . . . Practice Speaking in the Present Tense

**Disc Two, Tracks 1-6:**
1: Lesson 44 . . . The Future Tense
2: Lesson 45 . . . Speaking in the Past Tense
3: Lesson 46 . . . Some New Verbs (Present and Future Tense)
4: Lesson 47 . . . More New Verbs (Present and Future Tense)
5: Lesson 48 . . . The Telephone
6: Lesson 49 . . . Practice with the Past Tense

**Disc Three, Tracks 1-6:**
1: Lesson 50 . . . More Practice with the Past Tense
2: Lesson 51 . . . The Verbs "Iru" and "Aru" in Negative Sentences
3: Lesson 52 . . . The Copula "Desu" with Adjectival Nouns
4: Lesson 53 . . . The Copula "Desu" with Verbal Adjectives
5: Lesson 54 . . . The Verb "To Have" in the Negative Past Tense
6: Lesson 55 . . . Practice with the Negative Past
Japanese can be written in four different ways. This text uses “Rōmaji” and “Hirigana” for all examples. “Rōmaji” uses the English alphabet to write Japanese words phonetically. “Hirigana” is a phonetic writing system which uses Japanese characters based on Japanese syllables. “Katakana” is a phonetic writing system used to write Japanese words which are derived from foreign languages. “Katakana” is similar to hirigana but uses a different set of Japanese characters. “Kanji” is a picture writing system based on Chinese picture language. “Rōmaji” is used primarily by foreigners because it is easier for them to understand. Different texts which use “Rōmaji” often spell words differently depending on which conventions they use and how the writer pronounces a given word. Spelling differences also exist within given conventions. This can be due to differences in how a word might be pronounced. For example, an “F” or an “H” may often be used interchangeable. Likewise, “-tu-” and “-tsu-” are often interchanged etc. A double vowel can be expressed by a single vowel with a line above it. (“oo” = “ō” or “aa” = “ã” etc.) In English, every word can be spelled either correctly or incorrectly. “Rōmaji” has more leeway when it comes to spelling. In “Rōmaji”, a given word can often be spelled several different ways, all of which would be correct.

The “Hirigana” character chart which follows shows all of the Hirigana characters which exist. Virtually any Japanese word can be written using these phonetic characters. It’s not really very difficult to learn to read Hirigana. Almost any Japanese word which is written in Hiragana can be converted to Rōmaji by using this chart. Likewise, words written in Rōmaji can be converted to Hirigana through use of this chart. Try using this chart to convert a few simple words from Hirigana to Rōmaji and back. You’ll find that it’s not really as difficult as it looks.
### Japanese Syllabary Chart

#### HIRAGANA CHARACTERS

##### Basic Characters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>ka</th>
<th>ga</th>
<th>sa</th>
<th>za</th>
<th>ta</th>
<th>da</th>
<th>na</th>
<th>ha</th>
<th>ba</th>
<th>pa</th>
<th>ma</th>
<th>ra</th>
<th>wa</th>
<th>n</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ki</td>
<td>gi</td>
<td>shi</td>
<td>ji</td>
<td>chi</td>
<td>ji</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>hi</td>
<td>bi</td>
<td>pi</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>ri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>gu</td>
<td>su</td>
<td>zu</td>
<td>tsu</td>
<td>zu</td>
<td>nu</td>
<td>fu</td>
<td>bu</td>
<td>pu</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>ru</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>ke</td>
<td>ge</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>ze</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>ne</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>pe</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>re</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>ko</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>zo</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>ho</td>
<td>bo</td>
<td>po</td>
<td>mo</td>
<td>ro</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

##### Combination Characters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ya</th>
<th>kya</th>
<th>gya</th>
<th>sha</th>
<th>ja</th>
<th>cha</th>
<th>ja</th>
<th>nya</th>
<th>hya</th>
<th>bya</th>
<th>pya</th>
<th>mya</th>
<th>rya</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yu</td>
<td>kyu</td>
<td>gyu</td>
<td>shu</td>
<td>ju</td>
<td>chu</td>
<td>ju</td>
<td>nyu</td>
<td>hyu</td>
<td>byu</td>
<td>pyu</td>
<td>myu</td>
<td>ryu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>kyo</td>
<td>gyo</td>
<td>sho</td>
<td>jo</td>
<td>cho</td>
<td>jo</td>
<td>nyo</td>
<td>hyo</td>
<td>byo</td>
<td>pyo</td>
<td>myo</td>
<td>ryo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 32 - じゅぎょう32-

SENTENCES AND PHRASES, GENERAL

Of course. ................................. Mochiron. .................................もちろん。
It's O.K. .................................. Daijōbu desu. .............................だいじょうぶです。
O.K. It's no problem .................... Daijōbu desu. Mondai nai desu. .............................だいじょうぶです。もんだいないです。
not bad ................................... waruku arimasen ..............................それはわるくありません。
"It" is not bad. / "That" is not bad. [referring to a specific object or subject] Sore wa waruku arimasen. ..............................それはわるくありません。
so so ........................................ māmā .................................まままあ
It's good. / It's good, I assure you ........................... Ii desu yo. .................................いいですよ。
"That" is fine, I assure you. ........................... Sore wa ii desu yo. .................................それはいいですよ。
I'm hungry. / Stomach is empty. ................ [Watashi wa] onaka ga suiteimasu [suku] [わたしは]おなかがすいていま す。[すく]
I'm thirsty. / Throat is dry. .................... [Watashi wa] nodo ga kawaiteimasu [kawaku] [わたしは]のどがかわいていま す。[かわく]
It's good weather. .......................... Ii tenki desu. .................................いいてんきです。
It's good weather, isn't it? .................. Ii tenki desu ne. .................................いいてんきですね。
I'm hot. / It's hot .......................... Atsui desu. .................................あついです。
My mother is warm. [temperature] .......... Haha wa atatakai desu. ............................ はははあたたかいです。
Your mother is cold. [temperature] ......... Anata no okasan wa samui desu. ............................ あなたのおかさんはさむいです。
My father is tired .......................... Chichi wa tsukareteimasu, [tsukareru] ............................ ちちはつかられています。[つかれる]
I'm lost ................................... Watashi wa mayoimashita, [mayou] ............................ ［まよう］あなたのいなはまよいしました。
Your dog is lost. .......................... Anata no inu wa mayoimashita, [mayou] ............................ ［まよう］あなたのいぬはまよいました。
She is not lost ............................ Kanojo wa mayotteimasen, [mayou] ............................ かのじょはよっていません。[まよう]
We are happy. .................................................. Watashitachi wa shiawase desu. ........................ watashitachi wa shiawase desu.
That store is closed. ..................................... Sono mise wa shimatteimasu. [shimeru] ........... そのみせはしまっています。
The stores are open. ..................................... Mise wa aiteimasu. [aiteiru] ........................... みせはあいています。 [あっている]

The negative of "Warui desu." ("It's bad." or literally "Bad is.") is "Waruku arimasen." (It's not bad). The adjective "Warui" is used in affirmative sentences but the "i" changes to "ku" for negative sentences.

LESSON 33 - .................................................. JUGYŌ 33 - ...........................................
SENTENCES WITH NEGATIVE ADJECTIVES HITEI NO KEIYŐSHI ひていのけいようし
She is beautiful. ........................................... Kanojo wa kirei desu. ................................. かのじょはきれいです。
She is not beautiful. ..................................... Kanojo wa kirei ja arimasen. ........................ かのじょはきれいじゃありません。
Her child is big. .......................................... Kanojo no kodomo wa ōkii desu. .................. かのじょのこどもはおおきいです。
Her child is not big. ..................................... Kanojo no kodomo wa ōkii arimasen. ........... かのじょのこどもはおおきではありません。
This ticket is expensive. ............................... Kono kippu wa takai desu. ......................... このきっぷはたかいです。
This ticket is not expensive. ........................ Kono kippu wa takaku arimasen. ................. このきっぷはたかくありません。
This ticket is not very expensive. .................. Kono kippu wa amari takaku arimasen. ........... このきっぷはあまりたかくありません。
Those are difficult problems. ....................... Sorera wa muzukashii mondai desu. ............ それらはむずかしいもんだいです。
Those are not difficult problems. ................. Sorera wa muzukashii mondai ja arimasen. それらはむずかしいもんだいじゃありません。
This is very bad. ........................................... Kore wa totemo warui desu. ....................... これはとてもわるいです。
This is not very bad. .................................... Kore wa amari waruku arimasen. .................. これはあまりわるくありません。
These suitcases are heavy. ............................ Korera no sūtsukēsu wa omoi desu. ........... それらのすつとそのおもいです。
These suitcases are not heavy. ...................... Korera no sūtsukēsu wa omoku arimasen. .... それらのすつとそのおもくではありません。
I am sick. ................................................. Watashi wa byōki desu. ............................... わたしはびょうきです。
I am not sick.  Watashi wa byōki ja arimasen.
You are tired.  Anata wa tsukareteimasu. [tsukareru]
You are not tired.  Anata wa tsukareteimasen. [tsukareru]
We are happy.  Watashitachi wa shiawase desu.
We are unhappy. / We are not happy.  Watashitachi wa shiawase ja arimasen.
He is very intelligent.  Kare wa totemo kashikoi desu.
He is not very intelligent.  Kare wa amari kashikoku arimasen.
This is clean.  Kore wa kirei desu.
This is not clean.  Kore wa kirei ja arimasen.
You are behind schedule. (plural)  Anatagata wa yotei yori osoi desu.
You are not behind schedule.  Anatagata wa yotei yori osoku arimasen.
It's cold.  Samui desu.
It's not cold.  Samuku arimasen.
It's hot.  Atsui desu.
It's not hot.  Atsuku arimasen.
It's warm.  Atatakai desu.
It's not warm.  Atatakaku arimasen.
It's cool.  Suzushii desu.
It's not cool.  Suzushiku arimasen.
It's sunny.  Hare desu.
It's not sunny.  Hare ja arimasen.
It's windy. / The wind is strong.  Kaze ga tsuyoi desu.
It's not windy. / The wind is not strong.  Kaze ga tsuyoku arimasen.
LESSON 34 - .................................................................

SENTENCES AND PHRASES, TRANSPORTATION

Excuse me, what time does the next train to Hiroshima leave? [L Excuse me, next Hiroshima bound train what hour at exits?]

Sumimasen, tsugi no Hiroshima yuki no densha wa nanji ni demasu ka.

じゅぎょう34 - のりもののにぶん とふれず

じゅっぴんあと あて

That train leaves in ten minutes.

Sono densha wa jippun ato ni demasu. [deru]

それでんはじゅっぴんあとにでます。 [でる]

It leaves at ten o'clock in the morning.

Asa no jūji ni demasu. [deru]

あさのじゅうじにでます。 [でる]

How much is a ticket?

Kippu wa ikura desu ka.

きっぷはいくらですか。

Is (it) first or second class?

itto sorottom niitō desu ka.

いっとうそれともんとうですか。

Second class, please.

Nitō o onegai shimasu.

にとうをおねがいします。

It's four thousand yen.

Yon sen en desu.

よんせんえんです。

He wants a ticket for the ten A.M. train to Kyoto.

Karen wa asa jūji no Kyōto made no densha no kippu ga hoshii desu.

かれはあさじゅうじのにとまでのでんしゃのきっぷがほしいです。

Excuse me, sir, where is the bus to the beach?

Sumimasen, sunahama made no basu wa doko desu ka.

すみません、すなはままでのバスはどこですか。あそここのひだりがわにあります。

It's over there, on the left side.

Asoko no hidari gawara ni arimasu. [aru]

あそこのひだりがわにあります。[ある]

Which one? There are many.

Dore desu ka. Takusan arimasu. [aru]

どれですか。たくさんあります。[ある]

It's the number five.

Go ban desu.

ごばんです。

Thank you very much.

Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.

どうもありがとうございます。

the beach area.

kaigen

かいがん
Does this bus go to the beach?

No, the number 5 bus goes to the beach.

At what time does the last bus to the beach leave?

The last bus leaves at 17:20.

LESSON 35 - SENTENCES AND PHRASES, MONEY

Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?

What services are needed?

I want to change some money.

There is a bank on the other side of the street, on the right side.

How much is today's rate of exchange?

It's one dollar for one hundred yen.

I would like to buy some Japanese yen.

How much?

I would like to change 100 dollars.

I'd like some in coins, please. / A few coins please.

There you are.

Thank you.
LESSON 36 - SENTENCES AND PHRASES, HOTEL

Excuse me, do you have any rooms? / L. Excuse me, rooms exist?

Yes, of course.

No, no vacancy [L. No, occupied is.]

How much for a night?

For one person or two people?

How many beds do you want?

How many beds are in the room?

For how many people?

For me only. [L. It's me only.]

With a bathroom and a toilet? / Toilet and bathroom are attached?

No, only a washbasin.

One night is 10,000 yen.

May I see... [L. Even if I see, is it good?]

May I see the room?

Of course. It's this way.

Do you want the room? / Is this room good?

No, it's too expensive.

Is there a cheaper room?

JUGYŌ 36 - HOTERU NO HANASHI

Sumimasen, heya ga arimasu ka. [aru]

Hai, mochiron

Iie, manshitsu desu.

Ippaku ikura desu ka.

Hitori desu ka. Futari desu ka.

Beddo wa ikutsu hoshii desu ka.

Heya ni beddo ga ikutsu arimasu ka. [aru]

Nan nin desu ka.

Watashi dake desu.

Toire to furoba tsuki desu ka.

Iie, senmenjo dake desu.

Ippaku ichi man en desu.

Mite

Mite mo ii desu ka.

Heya o mite mo ii desu ka.

Mochiron, kochira desu.

Kono heya de ii desu ka.

Iie, takasugimasu. [takasugiru]

Motto yasui heya wa arimasu ka. [aru]

じゅぎょう36－ほてるのはなし

すみません、へやがありますか。[ある]

はいもちろん。

いいえ、まんしつです。

いっぱいいくらですか。

ひとりですか。ふたりですか。

べットはいくつほしいですか。

へやにべットがいくつありますか。[ある]

なんにんですか。

わたしだけです。

といれとふろばつきですか。

いいえ、せんめんじょだけです。

いっぱいちまえんえです。

みいて

みてもいいですか。

へやをみてもいいですか。

もちろん、こちらです。

いいえ、たかすぎます。

もっとやすいへやはありますか。[ある]
Yes, but it's very small, you know. Hai, demo totemo chiisai deshoo. はい、でもとても小さいでしょう。
Do you have a better room? / Is there a better room? Motto iji heya wa arimasu ka. [aru] もっといいへやはありますか。[ある]
No, I am sorry. Iie, sumimasen. いいえ、すみません。
I want the room. / That room is good. Sono heya ga ii desu. そのへやがいいです。
Which one [is it]? Dore desu ka. どれですか。
The small room, number seven. / It's the number seven small room. Nana ban no chiisai heya desu. ななばんのちいさなへやです。
Thank you. Sign here please. Arigato. Koko ni sain o onegai shimasu. ありがとうございます。ここにさいんをおねがいします。

LESSON 37 - JUGYŌ 37 - WATASHI WA DOKO DESU KA. じゅぎょう37－ わたしはどこですか。
SENTENCES AND PHRASES, GETTING AROUND
Excuse me, sir, where is the nearest post office? Sumimasen, ichi ban chikai yūbin kyoku wa doko desu ka. すみません、いちばんちかいゆびんきょくはどこですか。
It's very far from here, you know. Koko kara totemo tōi deshoo. ここからとても遠いでしょう。
How many kilometers from here is (it)? Koko kara nan kiro desu ka. ここからなんキロですか。
I don't know, but it's about ten minutes by car. Wakarimasen, shikashi koko kara kuruma de jupppun kurai desu. わかりません、しかしこここからくるまでじゅっぷんくらいです。
Is there a bus or a taxi near here? Chikaku ni basu ka takushi ga arimasu ka. [aru] ちかくにはバスかタクシーがありま すか。[ある]
Yes, there is a taxi, but it's very expensive. Hai, takushi ga arimasu, shikashi totemo はい、タクシーがあります、しか
How much is the bus? Basu wa ikura desu ka. ばすはいくらですか。
The bus is free, but it's very difficult. Basu wa tada desu, shikashi totemo muzukashii desu. ばすはただです、しかしとてもむずかしいです。
Why? Naze. なぜ。
Because the bus goes only two kilometers. Naze naraba basu wa ni kiro shika ikimasen. [iku] なぜならばはにきろしかいいません。[いく]
Oh, that's a problem, you know. A, sore wa mondai desu ne. あ、それはもんだいですね。
I want to buy some stamps. Kitte o kaitai desu. きってをおきたいです。
I sell stamps here, you know. Koko de kitte o urimasu yo. [uru] ここでいてをうりますよ。[うる]
three things (thin or paper items) san mai さんまい
Ah good. I want three, 100 yen stamps. / Ah Ii desu ne. Hyaku en no kitte o san mai kudasai. いいですね。ひゃくえんのきってをさんまいください。
Good. 100 yen stamps, three please. いいですよ。ひゃくえんのきってをさんまいください。
Yes, there you are. Hai, dōzo. はい、どうぞ。
Thank you. Dōmo arigatō. どうもありがとうございます。
You're welcome. Dō itashimasite. どういたしまして。

The verb "wakarimasen" means "don't know" or "don't understand".

LESSON 38 - JUGYŌ 38 - HŌKŌ NO FUREZU じゅぎょう38−ほうこうのふれーゆ
SENTENCES AND PHRASES, DIRECTIONS Excuse me, I'm looking for this address. Sumimasen, kono jūsho o sagashiteimasu. すみません、このじゅうしょをさ
Go straight ahead please. Massugu itte kudasai. [iku] がしています。[さがす]
Go straight on this street. / [L. This street] Kono michi o massugu itte. [iku] このみちをまっすぐ行って。
straight go.]
curve magari まがり
as far as the curve of the corner magari kado made まがりかどまで
Go as far as the corner please Magari kado made itte kudasai. [iku] まがりかどまで行ってください。

And then, turn left at Motomachi street. (polite) Soshite Motomachi dori de hidari e そしてもとまちどうりでひだりへ
magatte kudasai. [magaru] まがってください。[まがる]
Then turn right at the police station. (polite) Soshite koban de migi e magatte kudasai. そしてこうばんでみぎへまがって
[koban] ください。[まがる]
Go straight ahead for 100 meters. / From there, go 100 meters straight ahead. Sore kara hyaku metoru massugu itte. それからひゃくめーとるまっすぐ
[iku] いって。[いく]
It's near the small bakery. Chisai panya no chikaku ni arimasu. [aru] ちいさいパンやのちかくにあります。[ある]
It's next to the hospital. Byoin no tonari ni arimasu. [aru] びょういんのとなりにあります。[ある]
It's across from the pharmacy. Kusuriya no temae ni arimasu. [aru] くすりやのてまえにあります。[ある]
It's on the other side of the street. Michi no mukogawa ni arimasu. [aru] みちのむこうがわにあります。[ある]
Can you draw [write] a map for me? (Anata wa) chizu o kakemasu ka. [kaku] (あなたは)ちずをかかえますか。[かく]
Certainly. Do you have a pencil? [L. Certainly. Mochiron. Enpitsu ga arimasu ka. [aru] もちろんです、えんぴつがあります
Pencil exists?

Yes. I also have paper. / Yes. paper also exists. ............. Hai, kami mo arimasu. [aru]................................. はい、かみもあります。 [ある]

In this lesson, the verb form "sagashiteimasu" is used instead of "sagashimasu". Both of these verbs are forms of the verb "sagashu" (to search for). The form "sagashiteimasu" is equivalent to the English present tense progressive form as in "I am looking for..." whereas "sagashimasu" is equivalent to the present tense indicative mood "I look for..." For certain verbs and certain situations, the "-iteimasu" form of the verb is required. At this point in your studies, the "-iteimasu" form of the verb is being introduced occasionally as vocabulary only and not as a grammar point. These points will be discussed in greater detail in a later lesson.

The verb "magatte kudasai" is a polite form of the verb "magarimasu [magaru]" (to turn). This form is used to make polite requests or to tell someone politely to do something. "Magatte kudasai" is a polite way of telling someone to "turn".

LESSON 39 - .......................................................... JUGYŌ 39 - .......................................................... じゅぎょう39－
SENTENCES AND PHRASES, KAIWA NO FUREZU かいわのふれーず
CONVERSATION

Good morning, John, ......................................... Ohayō gozaimasu John-san, ........................................... おはようございますジョンさん、
How's it going? .................................................. Ogenki desu ka. ...................................................... おげんきですか。 [する]
Fine, and you? ................................................... Genki desu yo, anata wa. ........................................... げんきですよ、あなたは。
I'm going to my parents house. .............................. [Watashi wa] ryōshin no ie ni ikimasu. ................. [いく]
Are you going by car? 闻かれるまでいきますか。 [iku]
No, I'm going by bike. 車ではない、自転車でいきます。 [iku]
It's not very far from here. ここからあまりとおくありません。 [aru]
At what time are you leaving? なんじにでますか。 [deru]

About noon. ひろごろ。
First, I'm going to the bakery. さいしょにパンを買いに行く。
Why? To buy some bread? どうして。パンを買いです。
No. To meet my older brother. いいえ、お兄さんと行く。

Does he work at the bakery? かれはパン屋で働いているか。
Yes, he works with my older sister. 親元、かれはおねえさんと働いている。

Oh, I see. なるほど。
late おそく
It's becoming late. おそくなった。 [iku]
again / once more また

Yes, of course, see you soon. はい、もちろんです。またあいましょう。 [au]
LESSON 40 - THE VERB "DESU" (TO BE)  
(PRESENT TENSE)

I am very short.  Watashi wa totemo sei ga hikuj desu.  わたしはとてもせいがひくいです。
I am not very short  Watashi wa amari sei ga hikukunai desu.  わたしはあまりせいがひくくないです。
You are a good person.  Anata wa ii hito desu.  あなたはいいひとです。
You are not my friend.  Anata wa watashi no tomodachi ja arimasen.  あなたはわたしのともだちじゃありません。

That's a good book. / That book is good.  Sono hon wa ii desu.  その本はいいです。
That is not a good book.  Sono hon wa yoku arimasen.  その本はよくありません。
He is not Spanish.  Kare wa Supeinjin de wa arimasen.  彼はスペイン人じゃありません。
We are British.  Watashitachi wa Iirisujin desu.  わたしたちはイギリス人です。
This is a British car.  Kore wa Iirisu no jidoشا desu.  これはイギリスの車ですよ。
You are Americans.  Anatagata wa Amerikajin desu.  あなたたちはアメリカ人です。
They are very important.  Arera wa totemo taisetsu desu.  あれらはとてもたいせつです。
They are not very important.  Arera wa amari taisetsu ja arimasen.  あれらはあまりたいせつじゃありません。
I'm very busy.  Watashi wa totemo isogasii desu.  わたしはとてもいそがしいです。
I'm not very busy.  Watashi wa amari isogashiku arimasen.  わたしはあまりいそがしくありません。
Where are my books?  Watashi no hon wa doko desu ka.  わたしの本はどこですか。

The suffix "-jin" in "Amerikajin" etc. means "person".

The phrase "is good" is translated as "ii desu". The negative of "ii desu" is "yoku arimasen". This is an irregular construction.

The word "desu" is called the "copula". It can usually be translated into the English verb "to be" as in "I am.", "You are.", "He is." etc. The copula "desu" often conveys the meaning of "equals". "Desu" is the conjugated form of the verb "de aru" and its negative is "ja arimasen".
LESSON 41 - .......................................................... JUGYŌ 41 - ..........................................................

THE VERBS "IMASU" AND "ARIMASU" "ARIMASU" TO "IMASU"
("TO BE" OR "TO EXIST") (PRESENT TENSE) NOTSUKAI KATA

You are at the airport. ............................................ Anata wa hikōjō ni imasu. [iru] あなたはひこうじょうにいます。
[いる]

I am not at the bus station. .................................... Watashi wa basu tei ni imasen. [iru] わたしははすていにいません。
[いる]

He's with my older brother. / He is together with my older brother. Kare wa watashi no oniisan to issho ni imasu. [iru] 彼れはわたしのおにいさんといっしょにいます。[いる]

He is not with my older brother. Kare wa watashi no oniisan to issho ni imasen. [iru] 彼れはわたしのおにいさんといっしょにいません。[いる]

She is with my cousin. / She is together with my cousin. Kanojo wa watashi no itoko to issho ni imasu. [iru] 彼女のところにはいます。[いる]

They are not here. (masculine or mixed.) Karera wa koko ni imasen. [iru] 彼らはここにいません。[いる]

They are at my house. (feminine) Kanojora wa watashi no uchi ni imasu. [iru] 彼女のうちにはいます。[いる]

You are in Spain. ................................................. Anata wa Supein ni imasu. [iru] あなたはスペインにいます。[いる]

Where is Jana? ..................................................... Jana san wa doko ni imasu ka. [iru] ジャナさんはどこにいますか。[いる]

Where is my luggage? ........................................... Watashi no nimotsu wa doko ni arimasu ka. [aru] わたしのにもつはどこにありますか。[ある]

The luggage is not here. Nimo doko ni imasen. [aru] もちとはここにありません。[ある]

Are the tickets in your wallet? Kippu wa anata no saifu ni arimasu ka. [aru] きっぷはあなたのさいふにありますか。[ある]

There are many people at the station. Eki ni takusan hito ga imasu. [iru] えきにはたくさん人がいます。[いる]
There are not many children at the airport. Kūkō ni takusan kodomotachi ga imasen. [iru]

There’s a spoon in my soup. Watashi no sūpu no naka ni, supūn ga arimasu. [aru]

There isn’t any coffee. Kōhi ga arimasen. [aru]

The verbs "imasu" [iru] and "arimasu" [aru] both mean "to be" in the sense of "to exist". "Imasu" is used for animate object except plants, and "arimasu" is used for inanimate objects and plants.

LESSON 42 - TO "HAVE" OR TO "OWN" SOMETHING 

I have a book. / I own a book. [Watashi wa] hon o motteimasu. [motteiru]

You have a big bed. / You possess a big bed. [Anata wa] okina beddo o motteimasu. [motteiru]

He has a wife. / [He] wife exists. [Kare wa] okusan ga imasu. [iru]

She has a child. / [She] child exists. [Kanojo wa] kodomo ga imasu. [iru]

We have a problem. / [We] problem exists. [Watashitachi wa] mondai ga arimasu. [aru]

You guys have a house. / You guys own a house. [Anatagata wa] uchi o motteimasu. [motteiru]

a ticket to travel/ travel ticket ryokō ken/ Chiketto
They have tickets for a trip to Spain. / They possess Spain bound travel tickets.

I have a father. / My father exists. / John has a father.

I have a mother. / My mother exists. / You have a mother. / Mother exists.

My house has three doors. / My house, three doors exist.

It has seven windows also. / Seven windows also exist.

We have time. / Time exists.

You have a pen. / You own a pen.

They have some tickets for the ferry boat. / They possess ferry boat tickets.

They have some gifts for their husbands.

I have a lot of things to do. / Many things to do exist.

When speaking about relatives, it is often important whose relative is being referred to. For example, only one's own mother can be called "haha" and only one's own father can be called "chichi". One's own mother or someone else's mother would be referred to as "okāsan". Likewise, one's own father or someone else's father would be called "otōsan".

Japanese doesn't have an exact equivalent of the English verb "to have". Instead, they use the verbs "arimasu [aru]" (to exist inanimately), "imasu [iru]" (to exist animately) and "motteimasu" [motte iru] (to "own" or "possess") to convey the equivalent meaning as shown in the examples above.
LESSON 43 - PRACTICE SPEAKING
IN THE PRESENT TENSE
You speak English very well. Anata wa eigo o jōzu ni hanashimasu. "あなたはえいごをじょうずにはなしします。「はなす"
You speak with my younger brother. Anata wa watashi no oto to hanashimasu. "あなたはわたしのおとうととはなしします。「はなす"
He doesn’t speak English. He speaks Spanish. Kare wa eigo o hanashimasen. Supeingo o hanashimasu. 「かれはえいごをはなしません。すべてんごをはなします。「はなす"
That person talks everyday. Ano hito wa mainichi hanashimasu. 「あのひとはまいにちはなしします。「はなす"
We speak with them sometimes. Tokidoki watashitachi wa karera to hanashimasu. 「ときどきわたしたちはかれらとはなしします。「はなす"
Do you people talk with your parents often? Anatagata wa yoku ryōshin to hanashimasu ka. 「あなたがたはよくりょうしんとはなしですか。「はなす"
They talk on the telephone. (feminine) Kanojō wa denwa de hanashimasu. 「かのじょはでんわではなしします。「はなす"
John talks with the waiter. Jon san wa uetā to hanashimasu. 「ジョンさんはうえいたーとはなしします。「はなす"
The children talk to their mother. Kodomotachi wa okāsan to hanashimasu. 「こどもたちはおかあさんとはなしします。「はなす"
You people talk too much. / You people do too much talking. Anatagata wa hanashi sugimasu. 「あなたがたははなしすぎます。」
LESSON 44 - じゅぎょう44 -
THE FUTURE TENSE みらいけい
MIRAI-KEI

I am going to go to the beach. Watashi wa sunahama e ikimasu. [iku]

I will buy lunch. Watashi wa hirugohan o kaimasu. [kau]

You are going to rent a car. Anata wa kuruma o karimasu. [kariru]

You will look for your son. Anata wa musuko o sagashimasu. [sagasu]

He is going to write a letter to his wife. Kare wa okusan ni tegami o kakimasu. [kaku]

He will talk with his daughter. Kare wa kare no musume to hanashimasu. [hanasu]

She is going to start tomorrow morning. Kanojo wa ashita no asa hajimemasu. [hajimaru]

She is going to wait for her husband. Kanojo wa goshugin o machimasu. [matsu]

It will rain next week. Raishū ame ga furimasu. [furu]

We are going to sell our house. Watashitachi wa] watashitachi no ie o urimasu. [uru]

We will eat dinner at home tonight. Konban watashitachi wa de bangohan o tabemasu. [taberu]

You guys are going to leave next week. Raishū anatagata wa shuppat su shimasu. [shuppat su suru]
You are going to come to my home. Anata wa watashi no ie ni kimasu. あなたはわたしのいえにきます。
Are they going to learn French? Karera wa Furansugo o naraimasu ka. かれらはふらんすごをならいますか。
Mrs. Smith isn't going to learn German. Sumisu san wa Doitsugo o naraimasen. すみすさんはドイツごをならいません。
They are going to pay the bill. Karera wa okanjō o haraimasu. [harau] かれらはおけんじょうをはらいます。[なろう]
Is the train going to leave at noon? Densha wa hiru ni demasu ka. [deru] でんしゃはひるにでますか。[でる]
The train will not arrive at 3 o'clock. Densha wa san ji ni tsukimasen. [tsuku] でんしゃはさんじにつきません。[つく]
The boy is going to shut the door. Otokonoko wa to o shinemasen. [shimeru] おとこのこはとをしめます。[しめる]
The girl will cut the meat. Onnanoko wa niku o kirimasu. [kiru] おんなのこはにくをきります。[きる]
All the trains are going to be late. All trains are delayed. Subete no densha wa okuremasu. すべてのでんしゃはおくれます。[おくれる]

In Japanese, there is no future tense. There is only the "past" or the "non-past". The past tense is used to talk about things in the past and the non-past is used to talk about everything else. This means that all the verbs that you've already learned to use to speak in the present tense are the same verbs you use to speak about the future. In English, future tenses are usually formed with the auxiliary verbs "will" or "shall" or with the word "going". For example, "I will eat.", "I shall eat." and "I'm going to eat" all mean essentially the same thing. In Japanese, "Watashi wa tabemasu." means "I eat.", "I will eat.", "I shall eat." or "I'm going to eat." An adverb of time such as "ashita" (tomorrow), "raišū" (next week) etc. can be added to help clarify the meaning if desired.
LESSON 45 - .......................................................... JUGYŌ 45 - .......................................................... じゅぎょう45 - かこけい

SPEAKING IN THE PAST TENSE .......................... KAKO-KEI .................................

I bought a book. ................................................. Hon o kaimashita. [kau] ................................. ほんをかいました。 [かう]

You bought breakfast. ................................. Anata wa asagohan o kaimashita. [kau] ................................. あなたはあさごはんをかいました。 [かう]

You bought a gift for your younger sister. ............... Anata wa anata no imōto no tame ni okurimono o kaimashita. [kau] ................................. あなたはあなたのいもうとのために おくりものをかいました。 [かう]

He bought a car last week. ................................. Kare wa senshū kuruma o kaimashita. [kau] ................................. かれはせんしゅうくるまをかいました。 [かう]

She bought an inexpensive gift at the store. ................. Kanojo wa mise de takakunai okurimono o kaimashita. [kau] ................................. かのじょはみせでたくかなくておくり ものをかいました。 [かう]

The man bought a watch. ................................. Otoko no hito wa tokei o kaimashita. [kau] ................................. おとこのひとはとけいをかいました。 [かう]

Mrs. Yamada bought our luggage at the store. ................. Yamada san wa mise de watashitachi no sūtsukēsu o kaimashita. [kau] ................................. やまださんはみせでわたしたちの すーつけーすをかいました。 [かう]

The man bought his clothes in Japan. ......................... Otoko no hito wa Nihon de kare no yōfuku o kaimashita. [kau] ................................. おとこのひとはにほんでかれのよ うふくをかいました。 [かう]

The woman bought something for my mother. ................. Onna no hito wa watashi no haha no tame ni nanika o kaimashita. [kau] ................................. おんなのひとはわたしのははのために なにかをかいました。 [かう]

The children bought things for their friends. ................. Kodomotachi wa karera no tomodachi no tame ni mono o kaimashita. [kau] ................................. こどもたちはかれらのもともだちの ためにものをかいました。 [かう]

He lived a good life. .............................................. Kare wa ii jinsei o sugoshimashita. [sugosu] ................................. かれはいいじんせいをすごしまし た。 [すごす]

You sold your tickets. ........................................... Anata wa anata no kippu o urimashita. [uru] ................................. あなたはあなたのきっぷをうりま した。 [うる]
We sold our house. ..................................................Watashitachi wa watashitachi no uchi o urimashita. [uru]
Did you sell your car? ..............................................Anata wa anata no kuruma o urimashita ka. [uru]
Michael sold our tickets. ........................................Maikeru san wa watashitachi no kippu o urimashita. [uru]
Those people sold my things. .................................Sono hitotachi wa watashi no mono o urimashita. [uru]
I left home about noon. ..........................................Watashi wa hiru goro ie o demashita. [deru]
You left at midnight. ............................................Anata wa yonaka ni demashita. [deru]
You left Italy after me. ..........................................Anata wa watashi no ato ni Itaria o demashita. [deru]
The boys went by plane. ..........................................Otoko no kotachi wa hikoki de ikimashita. [iku]
The girls went two weeks ago. .................................Onna no kotachi wa ni shukan mae ni ikimashita [iku]
I came here last month. ..........................................Watashi wa sengetsu koko ni kimashita. [kuru]
They came to my house last night. ......................Karera wa sakaban watashi no ie ni kimashita. [kuru]
He came to my store yesterday. ..........................Kare wa kinō watashi no mise ni kimashita. [kuru]
The guests arrived at five o'clock. .......................Okyakusan wa go ji ni tsukimashita. [tsuku]
Watashitachi wa yoru no roku ji nijuppun ni tsukimashita. [tsuku]
わたしたちはよるのろくじにじゅっぴんにつきました。[つく]

Watashitachi wa anata no mae ni Doitsu ni tsukimashita. [tsuku]
わたしたちはあなたのまえにどいつなきました。[つく]

Watashi wa kīnō panyā ni ikimashita. [iku]
わたしたのはきんおばんやにいきました。[いく]

Kanojo wa senshi Igirisu ni ikimashita. [iku]
かのじょはせんしゅういきなりさんにいきました。[いく]

Anata wa soko ni bōto de ikimashita ka. [iku]
あなたはそこにはいっていきましたか。[いく]

Watashitachi wa ninen mae Furansu ni ikimashita. [iku]
わたしたちはにねんまでふらんすにいきました。[いく]

Sono jūsho o sagashimashita. [sagasu]
そのじゅうしょうをおさがしました。[さがす]

Anata wa okanjo o haraimashita. [harau]
あなたはおかんじょうをはらいました。[はらう]

Kare wa sono heya o kashimashita. [kasu]
かれはそのへやをおしました。[かす]

Kare wa to o shimemashita. [shimeru]
かれはとをおしみました。[しめる]

Kanojo wa Amerika made ryokōshimashita. [ryokō suru]
かのじょはアメリカまでりょうこうしました。[りょうこうする]

Watashitachi wa Furansu o benkyōshimashita. [benkyō suru]
わたしたちはふらんすをごべんきょうしました。[べんきょうする]

Watashitachi wa okurimono o akemashita. [akeru]
わたしたちはおくりものをおきました。[あげる]

Anata wa pan o kirimasita. [kiru]
あなたはパンをきりました。[きる]

Anata wa nanika o shimashita. [soru]
あなたはなにかをしました。[する]
You did it. / You made it. .......................... Anata wa shimasita. [suru] あなたはしました。[する]
They spoke with the children. ......................... Karera wa kodomotachi to hanashimashita. かれらはこどもたちとはなしました。[はなす]
They took the airplane to London. / They rode .......... Karera wa Rondon yuki no hikoki ni karera wa Rondon yuki no hikoki ni かれらはロンドン行きのひこうきにのりました。[のる]
on a plane to London. ........................................... norimashita. [noru] かれらはロンドン行きのひこうき
They drank their drinks. (feminine) ..................... Kanojora wa kanojora no nomimono o Kanojora wa kanojora no nomimono o かのじょらはかのじょらの飲みものをおのみました。[のむ]
omimashita. [nomu] のをのみました。[のむ]
You saw the train. ........................................... Anata wa densha o mimashita. [miru] あなたは電車をみました。[みる]
Did you see my brother? ................................. Anata wa watashi no oniisan o mimashita あなたはわたしのおいをみました
ka. [miru] やったか。[みる]
He understood your English. .............................. Kare wa anata no eigo o wakarimashita. かれはあなたの英語をわかりました。[わかる]
I learned French in the United States. ................... Watashi wa Amerika de Furansugo o Watashi wa Amerika de Furansugo o わたしはアメリカでフランス語を
naraimashita. [narau] なりました。[ならう]
I lost my credit card. ....................................... Watashi wa watashi no kurejito kado o Watashi wa watashi no kurejito kado o わたしはわたしのクレジットカードを
nakushimashita. [nakusu] なくしました。[なくす]
Did you sleep well? ......................................... Anata wa yoku nemashita ka. [nemuru] あなたはよくねましたか。[ねむる]
We finished our dinners. ................................. Watashitachi wa watashitachi no bangohan Watashitachi wa watashitachi no bangohan わたしたちはわたしたちのぼんごはん
 o sumasemashita. [sumaseru] をすませました。[すませる]
We ate our dinner. .......................................... Watashitachi wa watashitachi no bangohan Watashitachi wa watashitachi no bangohan わたしたちはわたしたちのばんごはん
 o tabemashita. [taberu] をたべました。[たべる]
I was here last month. ..................................... Watashi wa sengetsu koko ni imashita. わたしはせんげつここにいました
[iru] た。[いる]
I had a big car. ............................................. Watashi wa okii kuruma o motteimashita. わたしはおおきいくるまをもっと
[motsu] していました。[もつ]

The polite form of the past tense is formed by changing the polite form present tense ending of the verb from "-masu" to "-mashita".
SOME NEW VERBS
(PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSE)
a question / the questions  shitsumon
We answer the questions. / We will answer the questions. Watashitachi wa shitsumon ni kotaemasu. [kotaeru]
The baby will be born tomorrow. Akachan wa ashita umaremasu. [umareru]
I forget. / He forgets. Wasuremasu. [wasureru]
He earns a lot of money. / He is going to earn a lot of money. Kare wa takusan no okane o mōkemasu. [mōkeru]
They often win. / Someone often wins. Yoku kachimasu. [katsu]
We get off the train in Tokyo. / We will get off the train in Tokyo. Watashitachi wa Tōkyō de [densha o] orimasu. [oriru]
Mr. Maru goes down the stairs. / Mr. Maru is going to go down the stairs. Maru san wa kaidan o orimasu. [oriru]
Mrs. Yamada will go up the stairs. Yamada san wa kaidan o noborimasu. [noboru]
I stay at expensive hotels. / Someone stays at expensive hotels. Takai hoteru ni tomarimasu. [tomaru]
Steve is moving to Tokyo next week. / Steve will move to Tokyo next week. Suchiibu san wa raishū Tōkyō ni hikkoshi shimasu. [hikkosu]
John moves the table. / John's going to move the table. Jon san wa tēburu o ugokashimasu. [ugokasu]
The children will run very fast. Kodomotachi wa totemo hayaku...
We walk very slowly. / We are going to walk very slowly. Watashitachi wa totemo yuukuri arimasu. [aruku]

Do you touch the food? / Will you feel the food? [Anata wa] tabemono o sawarimasu ka. [sawaru]

Mr. Yamada is going to give Mrs. Suzuki some money. / Mr. Yamada gives Mrs. Suzuki some money. Yamada san wa Suzuki san ni okane o ageteimasu. [ageru]

Mrs. Suzuki will give the money back. Suzuki san wa okane o kaeshimasu. [kaesu]

We visit our parents every day. [L. We, everyday, our parents, visit do.] Watashitachi wa mainichi ryōshin o hōmon shimasu. [hōmon suru]

We will visit the museum every day. [L. We, everyday, museum visit do.] Watashitachi wa mainichi bijutsu kan o hōmon shimasu. [hōmon suru]

The boy puts the book on the table./ The boy puts the book on the table's upper surface. Otokonoko wa teburu no ue ni hon o okimasu. [oku]

The boy puts on his clothes. [L. Man child his clothes puts on.] Otoko no ko wa kare no yōfuku o kimasu. [kiru]

I return to Yokohama next week. / I will return to Yokohama next week. Watashi wa raishū Yokohama e kaerimasu. [kaeru]

Do you turn on the television every day? / Anata wa mainichi terebi o tsukemasu ka. [tsukeru]

Will you turn on the television every day? [tsukeru]
Do you turn off the television at night? / Are you going to turn off the television at night? あなたはよるにテレビを切れますか。【けす】
smell / odor / aroma においに
Do you smell the desert? / Do you smell the desert's aroma? 【あなたは】でさといのにおいをかぎますか。【かぐ】
My older brother will receive many gifts. わたしのおにいさんはたくさんのものを受け取ります。【もろう】
My younger sister swims very well. わたしのいもうとはじょうずにおよぎます。【およぐ】
Do you guys go in that house every day? あなたがたはまいにちそのいえにはいりますか。【はいる】
She will enter the station at 8 a.m. かのじょはごぜんはじにえきにはいります。【はいる】
My older sister knows Mr Yamada. わたしのあねはやまださんをしっています。【しる】
Do they know Tokyo well? / Do you know Tokyo well? とうきょうをよくしっていますか。【しる】
effort どりよく
You people try very hard. [L. You people, very much effort do.] あなたがたとてもどりよくします。【どりよくする】
It will die within two days. それはふつかのうちににします。【しぬ】

It will fall off the table. / It falls from the table. それはてーぶるからおちます。【おちる】
She will become a waitress. / You will become a waitress. 
Ueitoresu ni narimasu. [ni naru]

It follows the street. / It goes like the street.
Sore wa michi no tōri ni ikimasu. [iku]

[Like a street goes.]

We dream every night. / We see dreams.
Watashitachi wa maiban yume o mimasu.

[Dreams every night.]

I go home at 7 p.m. every night. [L. I, every evening, p.m. 7 o'clock at return.]
Watashi wa maiban gogo shichi ji ni kaerimasu. [kaeru]

I will return to Hokaido every year. [L. I, every year, Hokaido to return.]
Watashi wa maitoshi Hokkaido ni kaerimasu.

My younger brother is going to return his gifts to the store.
Watashi no otōto wa mise ni kare no okurimono o kaeshimasu. [kaesu]

He takes the post office every morning. / He will pass the post office every morning.
Kare wa maiaisa yūhin kyōku o tōrisugimasu. [tōrisugiru]

a test / an examination
Shiken

He will pass every test. / She will pass every test.
Subete no shiken o gokaku shimasu [gokaku suru]

That seems difficult. / That appears difficult.
Sore wa muzukashii yōni miemasu. [yōni mieru]

Do you people use credit cards? / Will you guys use credit cards?
Anatagata wa kurejitto kado o tsukaimasu

the dishes
Sara

The waiter removes the dishes from the table. / The waiter will take away the dishes from the table.
Ueitā wa tēburu kara sara o ugokashimasu

Mr. Yamada often lends money to John.
Yamada san wa yoku Jon san ni okane o sarā

28
John sometimes borrows money from Mr. Yamada.

John owes some money to Mr. Yamada.

always

John always pays back the money.

This lesson shows several new verbs in "-masu" form. These are the "formal (or polite), indicative, affirmative" forms of the verbs. This form is used to talk about both present and future events. It can be equivalent to several English forms depending on the context of the conversation. For example, the Japanese sentence "Kare wa okane o kasegimasu." can be equivalent to the English present tense (He earns a lot of money.), the progressive form of the present tense (He is earning a lot of money.), the future tense (He will earn a lot of money.) or the near future tense (He is going to earn a lot of money.) An adverb such as "now" (ima), "tomorrow" (ashita), "often" (yoku), "every day" (mainichi), "always" (itsumo), "next week" (raishū), etc. can be added to help distinguish between present and future time. Remember that in Japanese, there is no distinct future tense. There is only the "past" and the "non-past".

Notice that several Japanese verbs are formed by combining the verb "suru" (to do) with another word. For example, the verb "to study" (benkyō suru) means "to do studying". Likewise, "to pass (an exam)" (gokaku suru) means "to do success", "to try" (doryoku suru) means "to do effort or endeavor" and "to visit" (hōmon suru) means "to do visit". Many Japanese verbs are formed with "suru" in this manner.

The verb "kakeru" means "to turn on", "to start up" or "to commence" when applied to certain appliances or the telephone.

Throughout this text, the dictionary forms of the Japanese verbs are shown in brackets after the Japanese sentences.
MORE NEW VERBS (PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSE)
When does it begin? / When will it start? Sore wa itsu hajimarimasu ka. [hajimar]
Will you guys come back tonight? / Do you people return tonight? Anatagata wa konban kaerimasu ka. [kaeru]
Will the dog return today? Inu wa kyō kaerimasu ka. [kaeru]
His father goes out every day. Kare no otōsan wa mainichi dekakemasu. [dekakeru]
Her husband will hear the train [s sound.] Kanojo no goshujin wa densha no oto o kikimasu. [kiku]
Does your friend listen to the people? Anata no tomodachi wa hitotachi ni kikimasu ka. [kiku]
My son keeps his money in his wallet. [Watashi no] musuko wa [kare no] saifu ni [kare no] okane o shimatte okimasu. [shimatte oku]
baby akachan
The woman holds her baby. Josei wa [kanajo no] akachan o dakimasu. [daku]
We are going to live a long time. Watashitachi wa nagaku ikimasu. [ikiru]
They always look at the people. Karera wa itsumo hitotachi o mimasu.
Your daughter looks tired. / Your daughter appears to be tired.

Anata no musume wa tsukareteiru yōni miemasu. [yōni miru]

a new car

atarashii jidōsha / shinsha

They're getting a new car tomorrow. / They will obtain a new car tomorrow.

Karera wa ashita atarashii jidōsha o te ni iremasu. [te ni ireru]

the mail

yūbin

My family sends a lot of mail.

Watashi no kazoku wa takusan no yūbin o okurimasu. [okuru]

Do you guys take the bus? / Do you people ride on the bus?

Anatagata wa basu ni norimasu ka. [noru]

Do you accept credit cards? / Do they accept credit cards?

Kurejitto kando o ukemasu ka. [ukeru]

That person reads a lot of books.

Sono hito wa takusan no hon o yorimasu. [yomu]

wonderful / amazing / great

sugoi

Your family prepares great dinners. / Your family makes fabulous dinners.

Anata no kazoku wa sugoi dinā o tsukurimasu. [tsukuru]

The children will play all day.

Kodomotachi wa ichininchiyū asobimasu. [asobu]

My grandfather thinks a lot.

Watashi no sofu wa yoku kangaemasu. [kangaeru]

John will wait near the station.

Jon san wa eki no chikaku de mattemasu. [matu]

He waits for the last train. / We will wait for the last train.

Saigo no densha o mattemasu. [matu]
Mr. Kaneda is going to take his wife to the pharmacy. [L. Mr. Kaneda, pharmacy to, his wife escorts.]

He shows his car to everybody.

That shop repairs cars. / That shop does car repair. [car’s repair]

Mr. Akiyama checks everything.

Paul and Mr. Yamamoto prefer that small restaurant.

She washes the windows every month. / We wash the windows every month.

Do you carry your younger sister’s books?

I always bring the tickets. / They always bring the tickets.

I meet my grandfather at 3 o’clock every day.

She meets many people at the coffeehouse.

Mr. Yamasaki and his wife spend a lot of money.
usually ................................................................. taitei ................................................................. たいてい
I usually find some money at the beach. ......................Watashi wa taitei biichi de okane o ........................ watashi wa taitei ibi shichi de oka nø
mitsukemasu. [mitsukaru] ..............................をみつけます。 [みつける]
Do you people take a lot of photos? ......................Anatagata wa takusan no shashin o .......あなたのたたくさんのしゃしん
torimasu ka. [toru] ..............................をとりますか。 [とる]

Remember that Japanese speakers will normally omit the subject or topic of a sentence if it is obvious that it is understood. Pronouns like "watashi", "anata", "kare", "kanojo", "watashtachi", "anatagata", "karera", etc. are not used as frequently in Japanese as their equivalents are in English. Most of the sentences shown in this text have subjects because they are not in the context of conversations where the subjects would be clearly understood. Subjects are also shown in this text in order to provide precise, complete translations of the English sentences. If a Japanese sentence has no subject, then the listener must figure out what or who it is. The implied subject of a Japanese sentence without a subject is usually "someone", "some people", "something" or "some things".
LESSON 48 - 

THE TELEPHONE

a telephone / a telephone call ........................................... denwa

There is a telephone call for you. ....................................... Anata ni denwa desu. あなたにでんわです。

a person to person call ....................................................... shimei denwa しめいでんわ

this neighborhood ............................................................. kono atari このあたり

Excuse me, is there a telephone near here? / Excuse ....... Sumimasen, kono atari ni denwa ga すいません、このあたりにでんわが
me, is there a telephone in this neighborhood? .................. arimasu ka. [aru] ありますか。[ある]

Yes, there is a telephone on the first floor. ........................ Hai, ikkai ni denwa ga arimasu. [aru] はい、いったいにでんわがありま

Are there any messages for me? ........................................... Watashi ni messēji ga arimasu ka. [aru] わたしにメッセーじがあります

I want to leave a message for my friend. ......................... Watashi wa [watashi no] tomodachi ni わたしは[わたしの]ともだちにメッセージを
mesēji o nokoshitai desu. [nokosu] のこしたいです。[のこす]

I want to buy a 1000 yen telephone card. .......................... Sen en no terehon kādo o kaitai desu. せんえんのてれほんかどをかたいです。[かう]

I will make a telephone call. / I commence a ........................ Watashi wa denwa o kakemasu. [denwa o わたしはでんわをかけます。[で
telephone call. kakeru わんをかける]

John will call tomorrow. [L. John, tomorrow, ..................... Jon san wa ashita denwa o kakemasu. じょんさんはあしたでんわをかけ
telephone call will commence.] [denwa o kakeru] ます。[でんわをかける]

I would like to make a telephone call. / I want to .............. Watashi wa denwa o kaketai desu. わたしはでんわをおかけたいです。
make a telephone call. [denwa o kakeru] [でんわをかける]

May I use your telephone? / Is it OK if I use your ........... Anata no denwa o tsukatte mo ii desu ka. あなたのでんわをつかってもいい
telephone? [L. Your telephone use good is?] [denwa o tsukaku] ですか。[でんわをつかう]

assistance ................................................................. tasukete / tetsudai たすけて/てつだい
Can you help me? / Will you give me assistance?

[L. You, me to, assistance give?]

Anata wa watashi o tasukete kuremasu ka.

[kureru]

I want to telephone my wife.

Watashi wa [watsa ni okusan ni denwa o kaketai desu. [denwa o kakeru]

[L. I, telephone, want to call]

Can you dial this telephone number, please? [L. This telephone number dial do give?]

Kono denwa bango o daiyaru shite kuremasu ka. [kureru]

Hello.

Moshi moshi

I would like to call collect. / I want to call collect.

Watashi wa korekuto kōru o kakita desu.

[kakeru]

Can you dial this telephone number, please? [L. This telephone number dial do give?]

Hello.

Moshi moshi

I would like to speak to Michael. / I want to speak to Michael.

Maikuru san to hanashitai desu. [hanasu]

Don’t hang up! / Don’t cut please!

Kiranai de kudasai.

tanomu

Ask Jean to call me. [L. Jean, to me, phone making affair ask please.]

Jin san ni watashi ni denwa suru koto o tanonde kudasai. [tanomu]

Approximately when is he going to return?

Kare wa itsu goro kaerimasu ka.

[kaeru]

What is the telephone number? [L. Telephone number, what number is?]

Denwa bango wa nan ban desu ka.
LESSEN 49 - PRACTICE WITH THE PAST TENSE

I ate. ......................................................... Watashi wa tabemashita. [taberu]
You knew someone. .................................. Anata wa dareka o shirimashita. [shiru]
You knew something. ................................. [Anata wa] naniko o shirimashita. [shiru]
Did he understand? ................................... Kare wa wakarimashita ka. [wakaru]
We wrote a letter. ..................................... Watashitachi wa tegami o kakimashita. [kaku]
We went to the store. ................................. Watashitachi wa mise ni ikimashita. [iku]
You people closed the window. .................... Anatagata wa mado o shimemashita. [shimeru]
You people arrived early. ........................... Anatagata wa hayaku tsukimashita. [tsuku]
They left. / They departed. [L. They departure] Karera wa shuppatsu shimashita. [shuppatsu suru]
They left the house. / They exited from the house. Karera wa ie kara demashita. [deru]
He stole my backpack. ............................... Kare wa watashi no ryukku sakku o nusumimashita. [nusumu]
I stopped my car at the corner. ...................... [Watashi wa] kado ni kuruma o tomemashita. [tomeru]
You loved many people. [L. You, many people, .................. Anata wa takusan no hito ni aisaremashita. ................あなたはたくさんのひとにあいさ
love. did.] [ai suru] [れました。[あいする]
I liked the lunch. [Watashi wa] hirugohan ga suki desu. [suki desu]
That cost a lot. Sore wa takusan kakarimashita. [kakaru]
She was wet. / She got wet. Kanojo wa niremasita. [nureru]
Did we finish? / Did they finish? Sumasemashita ka. [sumaseru]
They almost finished. / Someone almost finished. Hotondo sumasemashita. [sumaseru]
We almost finished the work. Watashitachi wa shigoto o hotondo sumashimashita. [sumaseru]
He was able to finish the matter. / to finish the thing or affair. Kare wa dekimashita. [dekuru]
He was able to finish [the matter]. Kare wa sumasu koto ga dekimashita. [dekuru]
He must have finished. Kare wa sumaseta ni chigai nai. [sumaseru]
He must have eaten. Kare wa tabeta ni chigai nai. [taberu]
He must have bought the book. [Kare wa] hon o katta ni chigai nai. [kau]
He needed a book. Kare wa hon ga hitsuyō deshita. [hitsuyō desu]
I meant "three". Watashi wa "san" no tsumori deshita. [tsumori desu]
She repeated that word. ................................................................. Kanojo wa sono tango o kurikaeshimashita. ........................................... かのじょはそのたんごをくりかえしました。 [くりかえす]

They answered [to] the questions. / He answered .................... Shitamon ni kotaemashita. [kotaeru] ........................................... しつもんにこたえました。 [こたえる]

You were born 20 years ago. ...................................................... Anata wa nijū nen mae ni umaremashita. ........................................... あなたはにじゅうねんまえにうまれました。 [うまれる]

Did you forget? / Did someone forget? .............................. Wasuremashita ka. [wasureru] .................................................... わすれましたか。 [わすれる]

Did you earn (some) money? / Did they earn ......................... Okane o mokemashita ka. [mokeru] .................................................. おかねをもうけましたか。 [もうける]


He went down. / He descended .................................................. Kari wa orimashita. [oriru] ......................................................... かれはおりました。 [おりる]

It moved. / That moved. ............................................................. Sore wa uogimashita. [ugoku] ..................................................... それはうごきました。 [うごく]

We ran as far as the store. / They ran as far as ................. Mise made hashirimashita. [hashiru] ................................................. みせまではしざりました。 [しざる]

We walked. / Someone walked ................................................ Arukimashita. [aruku] .............................................................. あるきました。 [あるく]

I walked to the youth hostel. / Someone walked ............... Yusu hosuteru made arukimashita. [aruku] ゆーすほすてるまであるきました。 [あるく]

They touched the baby. / Someone touched the .................. Akachan o sawarimashita. [sawaru] .................................................. あかちゃんをさわりました。 [さわる]

Where did she live? / Where did she reside? ...................... Kanojo wa doko ni sumimashita ka. [sumu] .................................... かのじょはどこに住みましたか。 [すむ]

You gave some money to your employee. ............................... Anata wa anata no jūgyō-in ni ikuraka no okane o agemashita. [ageru] あなたはあなたのじゅうぎょういんにくらかのおかねをあげました。 [あげる]
She gave the box back. / We gave the box back. ........................ Hako o torimodoshimashita .................................................. はこをとりもどしました。[とりもどす]

You visited your parents. ......................................................... Anata wa [anata no] ryōshin o hōmon ........................................... あなたは [あなたの] りょうしんをほうもんしました。[ほうもんする]

You loved many people. [L. You, many people, .......... Anata wa takusan no hito ni aisaremashita. .......... あなたはたくさんのひとにあいされました。[あいする]

The verb "ai suru" means "to love" or "to have affection for". The past tense "aisaremashita" has the connotation of "made love to". The more polite form "aisaremashita" means "loved", but not in a sexual context.
MORE PRACTICE

WITH THE PAST TENSE

Did he put the information on the table? .......... Kare wa tēburu no ue ni annai o okimashita ka. [oku]

Where did he put the information? / Where did you put the information? .......... Doko ni annai o okimashita ka. [oku]

I returned last month. / Someone returned last month .......... Sengetsu kacrimashita. [kaeru]

He turned on the television. / You turned on the television .......... Terebi o tsukemashita. [tsukeru]

You turned off the lights. / Someone turned off the lights .......... Denki o keshimashita. [kesu]

Did you smell the cake? / Did you smell the cake's aroma? .......... [Anata wa] kēki no nioi o kagimashita ka. [nioi o kagu]

Did they receive (some) mail? / Did you receive (some) mail? .......... Yūbin o moraimashita ka. [morau]

I swam in the ocean. / We swam in the ocean .......... Umi de oygimashita. [oygu]

She entered the building .......... Kanojo wa biru ni hairimashita. [hairu]

He died yesterday .......... Kare wa kinō shinimashita. [shinu]

Did you fall down [from] the stairs? .......... Anata wa kaidan kara ochimashita ka. [ochiru]

They became teachers. / He became a teacher .......... Sensei ni narimashita. [ni naru]

Did you follow the highway? [L. You, highway] .......... Anata wa kōsoku dōro no tōri ni ikimashita ka. [iku]

like, did go?]
They dreamed about their trip. Karera wa [karera no] ryōkō no koto o yume ni mimashita. [yume ni miru]

She went home. / She returned home. Kanojo wa uchi e kaerimashita. [kaeru]

I spent some time. / Someone spent a little time. Ikuraka no jikan o sugoshimashita. [sugosu]

I went past the post office. / Someone went past the post office. Yūbin kyoku o tōri sugimashita. [tōri sugiru]

I spent some money. / We spent a little money. Ikuraka no okane o tsukaimashita. [tsukau]

That seemed easy. Sore wa yasashii so deshita.

He used a computer. Kare wa konpyūtā o tsukaimashita. [tsukau]

We used the product. Watashitachi wa seichin o tsukaimashita. [tsukau]

What did she say? Kanojo wa nani o iimashita ka. [iu]

Did you try one more time? [Anata wa] mōichi do yatte mimashita ka. [yatte miru]

She took away a pillow. Kanojo wa makura o torimashita. [toru]

Did you owe a lot of money? [Anata wa] takusan no okane no kari ga arimashita ka. [kari ga aru]
Did they pay back that money? .......................... Karera wa sono okane o kaeshimashita ka. かれらはそのおかねをかえしましたか。
[kaesu]

I lent some money to my cousin. .......................... [Watashi wa watashi no] itoko ni okane o kashimashita. [kasu]

My cousin borrowed a little bit of money. .......................... [Watashi no] itoko wa ikuraka no okane o karimashita. [kariru]

When did they begin? ....................................... Sorera wa itsu hajimemashita ka. それらはいつはじめましたか。
[hajimeru]

My grandfather returned today. ............................ [Watashi no] ojisan wa kyō kaerimashita. おじいさんは今日はかえりました。
[kaeru]

My grandmother went out last night. ....................... [Watashi no] obasan wa sakuban dekakemashita. [dekakeru]

My uncle heard the television. ............................. [Watashi no] oji wa terebi o kikimashita. おじはテレビをききました。
[kiku]

My aunt listened to the people. ............................ [Watashi no] oba wa hitobito ni kikimashita. [kiku]

We kept the blanket. ........................................ Watashitachi wa mófu o hokan shimasita. わたしはもうふをほかんしました。
[hokan suru]

Did you look at the chair? .................................. [Anata wa] isu o mimashita ka. あなたはいすをみましたか。
[miru]

I got another fork. / I obtained one more fork. ............ [Watashi wa] fōku o mó hitotsu moraimashita. [mora]

Did you guys send the package? ............................ Anatagata wa tsutsumi o okurimashita ka. あなたがたはつみをおくりましたか。
[okuru]
They accepted my check. .................................................. Karera wa watashi no chekku o ukemashita. かれらはわたしのちえっくをうけました。[うける]
[ukeru]
She read the tourist information. / Someone read .................................. Ryōkō annai o yomimashita.[yomu] りょこうあんないをよみました。[よむ]
the travel information.

We prepared for the party. / We did party .................................. Watashitachi wa pātii no jumbi o shimashita. わたしたちはばーてぃのじゅんびをしました。[じゅんびする]
preparations.

They played together .................................................. Karera wa issho ni asobimashita. [asobu] かれらはいっしょにそびしました。[あそぶ]

a movie ................................................................. eiga えいが
a movie thing / a movie matter .................................. eiga no koto えいのがこと

He thought about the movie. ........................................... Kare wa eiga no koto o kangaemasita かれはえいがのことをかんがえました。[かんがえる]
[kangaeru]

I waited for the ball. / They waited for the ball. .................. Bōru o machimashita. [matsu] ぼーるをまちました。[まつ]

You took your friend to the movies./ You .................................. Anata wa anata no tomodachi o eigakan ni あなたはあなたのともだちをえいがんつれてきました。[つれてくる]
accompanied your friend to the movie theater. tsurete kimashita. [tsurete kuru]

Did you repair the refrigerator? [L. You, .................................. [Anata wa] reizōko no shūri o shimashita あなたは] れいぞうこのしゅうりをしましたか。
refrigerator's repair did?]

Paul checked the oil. ................................................... Poru san wa oiru o shirabemasita. ポールさんはおいるをしらべました。[しらべる]
[shiraberu]

She preferred the small apartment. .................................. Kanojo wa chiisai apāto o erabimasita. かのじょはちいさいあばーとをえらびました。[えらぶ]
[erabu]

We washed the furniture. .............................................. Watashitachi wa kagu o araimashita. わたしたちはかぐをあらいました。[あらう]
[arau]

They carried the groceries. ........................................... Karera wa shokuhin o hakobimashita. かれらはしょくひんをはこびました。[はこぶ]
[hakobu]
I brought (some) ice. ........................................... Watashi wa kōri o motte kimashita. ..........................わたしはこおりをもってきましました。
[motte kuru]

He met the boss at the party. .................................. Kare wa pātī de bosu ni aimashita. [au] ..........................かれはぱーていでぼすにあいました。 [あう]

Did you ask your girlfriend? .................................... [Anata wa] anata no gārufurendo ni ......[あなたは] あなたのがーるふれ
kikimashita ka. [kiku] .......................... どにききましたか。 [くいく]

I believed the president. ........................................ [Watashi wa] daitōryō o shinjimashita. ..........................わたしはだいたろうよをし
[shinjiru] .......................... んじました。 [しんじる]

We felt the heat. .................................................. Watashitachi wa atssu o .......わたしたちはあつさをかんじました。 [かんじる]
kanjimashita. [kanjiru] ..........................

Did you show the photo? / Did they show the photo? ....... Shashin o misemashita ka. [miseru] .......................... しゃしんをみせましたか。 [みせる]

They stayed at his house. ........................................ Karera wa kare no ie ni tomarimashita. ..........................かれらはかれのいえにとまりました。 [とまる]
[tomaru]

She worked for many years. ..................................... Kanojo wa nan nen mo hatarakimashita. ..........................かのじょはなんねんもはたらきました。 [はたらく]
[hataraku]

I found (some) money. ............................................ Watashi wa okane o mitsukemashita. ..........................わたしはお金をおみつけました。
[mitsukeru] ..........................

My trip was too short. / My trip was too brief. .......... Watashi no ryōkō wa totemo mijikakatta .......わたしのりょうこうはとてもみじか
[desu] .......................... かったです。 [みじかいです]
[mijikakatta desu]

There was a fire last week. ................................... Senshū kaji ga arimashita. [aru] .......................... せんしゅうかじがありました。
[ある]

Certain adjectives ending in "-i" are called verbal adjectives. They have endings of "-ai", ",-ii", ",-oi" and ",-ui". In polite speech, a verbal adjective is followed by the copula "desu" in the present and past forms. To form the past tense of a verbal adjective, drop the final "-i" to form the stem, then add "-katta" to the stem. For example: "mijikai desu" (is brief); and "mijikakatta desu" (was brief).
The particle "so" can be used to convey the idea of "seems". Notice the difference between "Sore wa yasashii desu." (That is easy.), "Sore wa yasashii so desu." (That seems easy.), "Sore wa yasashikatta deshita." (That was easy.) and "Sore wa yasashii so deshita" (That seemed easy.)

LESSON 51 - JUGYŌ 51 -
THE VERBS "IRU" AND "ARU" "IRU" TO "ARU",
IN NEGATIVE SENTENCES HITEI TEKI NA TSUKAIKATA

Mr. Yamaguchi is at the park. / Mr. Yamaguchi will be at the park.
Mr. Yamaguchi san wa kōen ni imasu. [iru]

The animal is not at the park. / The animal won't be at the park.
Dōbutsu wa kōen ni imasen. [iru]

I was at the station. [L. I, station at, existed.]
Watashi wa eki ni imashita. [iru]

I was not at the station. [L. I, station at, did not exist.]
Watashi wa eki ni imasen deshita. [iru]

The car is at the car repair shop. Jidōsha wa jidōsha shūri kōjō ni arimasu. [aru]

My bicycle is not at the hospital.
Watashi no jittensha wa byōin ni arimasen. [iru]

The luggage was at the airport. [L. Luggage, station at, existed.]
Nimotsu wa kūkō ni arimashita. [aru]

The luggage was not at the airport. [L. Luggage, airport at, did not exist.]
Nimotsu wa kūkō ni arimasen deshita. [aru]
You were at my house. [L. You, my house at, existed.] Anata wa watashi no ie ni imashita. [iru] あなたはわたしのいえにいました。
You were not at my house. Anata wa watashi no ie ni imasen deshita. あなたはわたしのいえにいませんでした。
My friends were with their husbands. [Watashi no] tomodachi wa kanojora no goshujin to issho ni imashita. [iru] わたしの]ともだちはかのじょらのごしゅじんといっしょにいました。
My friends were not with their husbands. [Watashi no] tomodachi wa kanojora no goshujin to issho ni imasen deshita. わたしの]ともだちはかのじょらのごしゅじんといっしょにいませんでした。
Everybody was there. [L. Everybody, there at, existed.] Daredemo wa soko ni imashita. [iru] だれでもはそこにいました。
Nobody was there. [L. Nobody, there at, did not exist.] Dare mo soko ni imasen deshita. [iru] だれもそこにいませんでした。
There was some coffee on the table. [L. Table's top at little coffee existed.] Tēburu no ue ni ikuraka no kōi ga arimashita. [aru] てっぺんのうえにいくらかのこーひーがありました。
There wasn't coffee on the table. [L. Table's top at coffee didn't exist.] Tēburu no ue ni kōhī ga arimasen deshita. [aru] てっぺんのうえにこーひーがありませんでした。
There were several trains at the station. Eki de ikutsuka no densha ga arimashita. えきでいくつかのでんしゃがありました。[aru]
Not very / not any. zen zen ぜんぜん
There weren't any trains at the station. [L. Station at, trains, not any, didn't exist.] Eki de densha ga zen zen arimasen deshita. えきででんしゃがぜんぜんありませんでした。[aru]
There was a line of people at the post office. / There was a queue at the post office. Yūbin kyoku de gyōretsu ga arimashita. ゆうびんきょくでぎょうれつがありました。[aru]
There weren't any people in town. Machi ni hito ga zen zen imasen deshita. まちにひとがぜんぜんいませんでした。 [いる]

There was someone at the house. Dareka ga ie ni imashita. [iru] だれかがいにいました。 [いる]

There wasn't anyone at the house. / Nobody was [not] at the house. Dare mo ie ni imasen deshita. [iru] だれもいにいませんでした。 [いる]

No there wasn't. / No it didn't exist. Iie arimasen deshita. [aru] いいえありませんでした。 [ある]

This lesson and the next one show several different ways in which the past tense of the English verb "to be" and its negatives are translated into Japanese.

The English verb "to be" can be translated into three different Japanese verbs. The verb "desu", which is covered in the next lesson, is often called the "copula". "Desu" is used to express ideas such as characteristics, number, identity, quality, etc. "Desu" means "to be" in the sense of "equivalent to" or "equal to". The verbs "arimasu" [aru] and "imasu" [iru] mean "to be" in the sense of "is located" or "exists". "Arimasu" is used for inanimate objects and plants. "Imasu" is used for animate objects (except plants). Their negatives are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT AND</td>
<td>PRESENT AND</td>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>PAST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(is, will be)</td>
<td>(is not, won't be)</td>
<td>(was)</td>
<td>(wasn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(exists)</td>
<td>(does not exist)</td>
<td>(existed)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(will exist)</td>
<td>(will not exist)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arimasu</td>
<td></td>
<td>arimashita</td>
<td>arimasen deshita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imasu</td>
<td></td>
<td>imashita</td>
<td>imasen deshita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 52 - THE COPULA "DESU" WITH ADJECTIVAL NOUNS

It is convenient. / It will be convenient. .................................................. Sore wa benri desu.

It is not convenient. / It will not be convenient. ...................................... [Sore wa] benri dewa arimasen.

It was convenient. ....................................................................................... [Sore wa] benri deshita.

It was not convenient. .......................................................... [Sore wa] benri dewa arimasen deshita.

It was not dry. .............................................................................................. [Sore wa] kawaii te imasen deshita.

It is quiet. / I will be quiet. ................................................................. Shizuka desu.

It is not quiet. / It won't be quiet. .......................................................... Shizuka dewa arimasen.

It was quiet. ................................................................................................ Shizuka deshita.

It was not quiet. ....................................................................................... Shizuka ja arimasen deshita.

They were kind. / You were kind. .................................................. Anata wa shinsetsu deshita.

They weren't pretty. [objects] ............................................................... [Sorera wa] kirei dewa arimasen.

They weren't pretty. [objects] ............................................................... [Sorera wa] kirei dewa arimasen deshita.

They weren't healthy. ............................................................................... [Karera wa] genki ja arimasen deshita.

He is not polite. / He won't be polite. ................................................... [Kare wa] teinei dewa arimasen.

He was honest. .......................................................................................... [Kare wa] shōjiki deshita.

My father was alone. ............................................................................ [Watashi no] chichi wa hitori deshita.
My father was not **alone**. ........................................... [Watashi no] chichi wa **hitori** dewa ...................... [わたしの] ちちはひとりではありませんでした。

Adjectives are words which help to describe or modify nouns. Examples are "big", "short", "heavy", "quiet", "large", "tall" etc. Japanese adjectives are very different from their English counterparts. Japanese adjectives fall into two groups. One group, called "adjectival nouns", is shown in this lesson. Adjectives in this group have noun-like characteristics. The other group, called "verbal adjectives" is shown in the next lesson. Verbal adjectives have verb-like characteristics. Both groups of adjectives can function like English adjectives in that they can be used to modify nouns which follow.

Adjectival nouns can usually be distinguished from verbal adjectives by the endings of their dictionary forms. Verbal adjectives end only in "-ai", "-ii", "-oi", or "-ui". They are often called "-i" adjectives. Adjectival nouns have endings different from verbal adjectives. They are often called "-na" adjectives because the suffix "-na" is added when they are used to modify nouns. (Many adjectival nouns also end in "-i".)

As was mentioned in the last lesson, the English verb "to be" can be translated into three different Japanese verbs. The verb "desu", which is often called the "copula" is used to express ideas such as characteristics, number, identity, quality, etc. "Desu" means "to be" in the sense of "equivalent to" or "equal to". The negatives of "desu" are formed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT AND</td>
<td>PRESENT AND</td>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>PAST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(is, will be)</td>
<td>(is not, won't be)</td>
<td>(was)</td>
<td>(wasn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desu</td>
<td>dewa arimasen</td>
<td>deshita</td>
<td>dewa arimasen deshita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desu</td>
<td>ja arimasen</td>
<td>deshita</td>
<td>ja arimasen deshita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
"Dewa" and "ja" mean essentially the same thing when used as shown in the examples above. "Ja" is less formal than "dewa", and is not normally used in the written language.

When the copula "desu" is used along with an adjectival noun, the two form the verb (or predicate) together. The adjectival noun is used along with the appropriate form of "desu" as shown in the text above.

**LESSON 53 - ....................................................... JUGYŌ 53 - .......................................................... じゅぎょう53-**

**THE COPULA "DESU" WITH **

**VERBAL ADJECTIVES**

That man is fast. / That man will be fast. .............................................. Sono otoko wa hayai desu. ...................................................... そのおとこははやいです。

That man is not fast. / That man will not be fast. ......................... Sono otoko wa hayaku arimasen. ............................................... そのおとこははやくありません。

That man is not fast. / That man will not be fast. ......................... Sono otoko wa hayaku nai desu. ............................................... そのおとこははやくないです。

That man was fast. .............................................................................. Sono otoko wa hayakkatta desu. ............................................... そのじょせいははやかったです。

That woman was not fast. ............................................................... Sono josei wa hayaku arimasesen deshita. ................................ そのじょせいははやくありませんでした。

That woman was not fast. ............................................................... Sono josei wa hayaku nakatta desu. ............................................... そのじょせいははやくなかったです。

We are busy. / We will be busy. ....................................................... Watashitachi wa isogashii desu. .................................................. わたしたちはいそがしいです。

We are not busy. / We will not be busy. ......................................... Watashitachi wa isogashiku arimasen. ......................................... わたしたちはいそがしくありません。

We are not busy. / We will not be busy. ......................................... Watashitachi wa isogashiku nai desu. ......................................... わたしたちはいそがしくないです。

We were busy. .................................................................................. Watashitachi wa isogashikatta desu. .......................................... わたしたちはいそがしかったです。

We were not busy ............................................................... Watashitachi wa isogashiku arimasen deshita. .................................. わたしたちはいそがしくありませんでした。

We were not busy ............................................................... Watashitachi wa isogashiku nakatta desu. ...................................... わたしたちはいそがしくなかった
I'm late. / They're late. ........................................... Osoi desu. .................................................. おそいです。
Jack was late. ................................................... Jyaku san wa osokatta desu じゃっくさんはおそかたです。
Jack was not late. ............................................. Jyaku san wa osoku arimasen deshita. / Jyaku san wa osoku nakatta desu。 じゃっくさんはおそくありませんでした。/じゃっくさんはおそくなかったです。
He will be funny. / Someone is funny. ..................... Omoshiroi desu. .............................................. おもしろいです。
That person was very funny. .................................. Sono hito wa totemo omoshirokatta desu。 そのひとはとてもおもしろかったです。
That person was not at all funny. .......................... Sono hito wa zen zen omoshirooku nakatta desu。 そのひとはぜんぜんおもしろくなかったです。
amusing ......................................................... omoshiro-okashii おもしろおかしい。
He is very amusing. / They will be very amusing. ........... Totemo omoshiro-okashii desu。 とてもおもしろおかしいです。
He is not very amusing. ....................................... [Kare wa] amari omoshiro-okashiku nai desu。/ [Kare wa] amari omoshiro-
okashiku arimasen。/ [Kare wa] amari omoshiro-
okashiku arimasen。/ [Kare wa] amari omoshiro-
okashiku arimasen。/ [Kare wa] amari omoshiro-
okashiku arimasen。 かれはあまりおもしろおかしくないです。/かれはあまりおもしろおかしくありません。
Those people were very amusing. ......................... Sono hitotachi wa totemo omoshiro-
okashikatta desu。 そのひとたちはとてもおもしろお
かしかったです。
Those people were not very amusing. ...................... Sono hitotachi wa amari omoshiro-
okashiku arimasen deshita。 そのひとたちはあまりおもしろお
かしくありませんでした。
Someone is sad. / Someone will be sad ................... Kanashii desu。 かなりません。
They are not sad. ........................................... [Karera wa] kanashiku arimasen。/ [Karera wa] kanashiku arimasen。 かれらはかんしくありません。
They are sad. ................................................ [Karera wa] kanashiku arimasen。/ [Karera wa] kanashiku arimasen。 かれらはかんしくないです。
The girl was sad yesterday. ................................... Onna no ko wa kinō kanashikatta desu。 おんなのはきのうかなかったです。
The girl was not sad yesterday. Onna no ko wa kinō kanashiku nakatta desu.

He is strong. / They will be strong. Tsuyoi desu.

The boy was very strong. Otoko no ko wa totemo tsuyokatta desu.

The boy was not very strong. Otoko no ko wa amari tsuyoku nakatta desu.

She is young. / We are young. Wakai desu.

The cat was very young. Neko wa totemo wakakatta desu.

The policeman was not very young. Keikan wa amari wakaku nakatta desu.

It's very beautiful. / It will be very beautiful. Utsukushii desu.

The view was very beautiful. Keshiki wa totemo utsukushikatta desu.

The view was not at all beautiful. Keshiki wa zen zen utsukushiku nakatta desu.

This lesson shows several ways in which verbal adjectives are used with the copula "desu" to form predicates.

When the copula "desu" is used along with a verbal adjective, the two words form the verb (or predicate) together. (Verbal adjectives end in "-ai", "-ii", "-oi" or "-ui". Examples are "osoi" [slow], "hayai" [fast], "chōsai" [small], "takai" [expensive], "ōkii" [big], etc.) Past tenses and negatives of these types of sentences are formed by replacing the final "-i" from the verbal adjective with the suffixes and words as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT AND FUTURE</td>
<td>PRESENT AND FUTURE</td>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>PAST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(is slow)</td>
<td>(is not slow)</td>
<td>(was slow)</td>
<td>(was not slow)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(will be slow)  (will not be slow)
osoi desu      osoku arimasen  osokatta desu  osoku arimasen deshita
osoku nai desu

takai desu   taikaku arimasen  takakatta desu  takaku arimasen deshita
taikaku nai desu

ökii desu   ökiku arimasen  ökikatta desu  ökiku arimasen deshita
ökiku nai desu

Alternative negative forms "-ku nai desu" and "-ku nakatta desu" are also shown in the above example.

LESSON 54 -  ..................................................  JUGYÔ 54 - ..................................................
THE VERB "TO HAVE"  "MOTSU" TO "ARU" TO "IRU"
IN THE NEGATIVE PAST TENSE  NO HITEI TEKI NA KAKO
I had a small house. ........................................ Watashi wa chiisai ie ga arimashita [aru] ...................................[Watashi wa] chiisai ie ga arimassen deshita. .......[Watashi wa] chiisai ie ga arimassen deshita. [arumukashii mondai ga arimashita. [aru]
I did not have a small house. ...................................[Watashi wa] chiisai ie ga arimassen deshita. .......[Watashi wa] chiisai ie ga arimassen deshita. [arumukashii mondai ga arimashita. [aru]
Jana had a difficult problem. ............................ Jana san wa muzukashii mondai ga arimashita. [aru] じゃなさんはむずかしいもんだいがありました。[ある]
Jana did not have a difficult problem. ............................ Jana san wa muzukashii mondai ga arimassen deshita. [aru] じゃなさんはむずかしいもんだいがありませんでした。[ある]
My parents had a big car. .................................. [Watashi no] ryōshin wa ökii na jidōsha o motte imashita. [motsu]
[watashi no]  りょうしんはおおきなじどうしゃをもっていません。[もつ]
My grandmother did not have a big car. [Watashi no] soba wa ōkii na jidōsha o motte imasen deshita. [motsu]

Those people had a lot of problems. Sono hitotachi wa takusan no mondai ga arimashita. [aru]

These people did not have many problems. Sono hitotachi wa takusan no mondai ga arimasen deshita. [aru]

My cousin had their tickets. [Watashi no] itoko wa karera no kippu o motte imashita. [motsu]

My cousin did not have his tickets. [Watashi no] itoko wa kare no kippu o motte imasen deshita. [motsu]

Somebody had a lot of money. Dareka wa takusan no okane o motte imashita. [motsu]

Nobody had (any) money. Dare mo okane o motte imasen deshita. [motsu]

That woman had two children. Sono josei wa futari no kodomo[tachi] ga imashita. [iru]

That woman did not have two children. Sono josei wa futari no kodomo[tachi] ga imasen deshita. [iru]

That woman did not have a younger sister. Sono josei wa imōto ga imasen deshita. [iru]

We did not have enough time. Watashitachi wa jibun na jikan ga arimasen deshita. [aru]

John's car did not have two doors. Jon san no kuruma wa futatsu no doa ga.
The English verb "to have" is usually translated into one of three different Japanese verbs. The verb "motte imasu" [motsu] is used to signify "to have" in the sense of ownership or possession. It also means "to hold". The verbs "arimasu" [aru] and "imasu" [iru] mean "to have" in the sense of "to exist". In Japanese, if a person doesn't actually "own", "possess" or "hold" something, then it simply exists. For example, things like problems cannot be owned. In English, one can say "I have a problem." The Japanese would say "A problem exists." "Aru" or "iru" are also used when ownership or possession are not being stressed. The Japanese are very polite and do not like to say that they own things because it may sound like they're bragging. So instead, they will often say something like "A car exists." (Watashi wa jidōsha ga arimasu.) instead of "I own a car." (Watashi wa jidōsha o motte imasu.) "Arimasu" is used for inanimate objects and plants. "Imasu" is used for animate objects (except plants).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE PRESENT AND FUTURE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE PRESENT AND FUTURE</th>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE PAST</th>
<th>NEGATIVE PAST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(o) motte imasu</td>
<td>(o) motte imasen</td>
<td>(o) motte imashita</td>
<td>(o) motte imasen deshita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ga) arimasu</td>
<td>(ga) arimasen</td>
<td>(ga) arimashita</td>
<td>(ga) arimasen deshita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ga) imasu</td>
<td>(ga) imasen</td>
<td>(ga) imashita</td>
<td>(ga) imasen deshita</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above verbs are shown with their grammatical particles. The verb "motte imasu" [motsu] uses the particle "o". The word preceding the particle "o" is, by definition, the direct object of the verb. In this case, the object of the verb "motsu" is the object which is possessed. The verbs "iru" and "aru" mean "to exist". These verbs are intransitive (i.e. They don't transfer action from a subject to a direct object.) so they don't have direct objects. The particle "ga", by definition, follows the word which is the subject of the sentence. In this case, "ga" follows the item which exists.
LESSON 55 - PRACTICE WITH THE NEGATIVE PAST

Didn't you talk on the telephone? Did you not speak on the telephone? (Anata wa denwa de hanashimasen deshita ka.)

They did not talk about the game. They did not discuss the game. (Karera wa shiai no koto o hanashimasen deshita.)

That person did not finish his work. That person did not complete his work. (Sono hito wa kare no shigoto o sumasemasen deshita.)

The teacher did not finish on time. The teacher didn't finish on time. (Sensei wa jikan dori ni sumasemasen deshita.)

The students did not finish the project. The students didn't finish the project. (Gakuseitachi wa keikaku o sumasemasen deshita.)

I didn't finish my homework. I didn't complete my homework. (Watashi wa watashi no shukudai o sumasemasen deshita.)

Those people did not sell radios. Those people didn't sell radios. (Sono hitotachi wa rajio o urimasen deshita.)

Takeo did not eat breakfast. Takeo didn't eat breakfast. (Takeo san wa asa gohan o tabemasen deshita.)

My niece did not buy a ticket. My niece didn't buy a ticket. (Watashi no mei wa kippu o kaimasen deshita.)

The train did not leave late. The train didn't leave late. (Densha wa osoku demasen deshita.)

My nephew did not look for a gift. My nephew didn't look for a gift. (Watashi no ojii wa okurimono o sagashimasen deshita.)

JUGYŌ 55 - HITEI TEKINA KAKO NO RENSHG

じゅぎょう55-ひていてきなかこのれんしゅう

あなたはでんわではなしませんでしたか。[はなす]

かれはしあいのことをはなしませんでした。[はなす]

そのひとはかれのしごとをすませませんでした。[すませる]

せんせいはじかんどおりにすませませんでした。

がくせいたちはけいかくをすませませんでした。

わたしがわたしのしゅくだいをすませませんでした。

そのひとたちはじおをおうりませんでした。[うる]

たかおさんがはあさごはんをたべませんでした。[たべる]

わたしがめいはきっぷをかいまませんでした。[かう]

でんしゃはおそくでませんでした。[でる]

わたしのおいはおくりものをさがしませんでした。[さがす]
That man did not close the door. そのおとこはとをしめませんでした。[しめる]
The Johnsons did not rent a house. じょんそんさんはいえをかりませんでした。[かりる]
I didn't learn Japanese [language]. わたしはにほんごをならいませんでした。[ならう]
The weather was not cold. てんきはさむくありませんでした。[ある]
Didn't you do something? あなたはなにかをしませんでしたか。[する]

The old man didn't live alone. としよりのおとこはひとりですいませんでした。[すむ]
We did not buy ice cream. わたしたちはあのいすくりもをかいませんでした。[かう]
I did not see the truck. わたしはとらっくをみませんでした。[みる]
The ship did not depart the day before yesterday. おとといふねはしゅっぱつしませんでした。[しゅっぱつする]
John's father did not go to the office. じょんさんのおとうさんはじむしょうにいきませんでした。[いく]
I did not pay (to) anybody. わたしはだれにもはらいませんでした。[はろう]
My pet did not sleep well. わたしのべっとはよくねませんでした。[ねむる]
I did not stay there. ............................................................ [Watashi wa] soko ni tomarimasen deshita ........... [わたしは] そこにとまりませんでした。 [とまる]

The motor did not start. ................................................... Mōtā wa kakarimasen deshita. [kakaru] ........... もっとはかかりませんでした。 [かかる]

The plane did not arrive on time. .................................... Hikōki wa jikan dori ni tsukimasen deshita. ........... ひこうきはじかんどおりにつきませんでした。 [つく]

Those people did not travel to China. .............................. Sono hitotachi wa Chūgoku made ryokō shimasen deshita. [ryokō suru] そのひとたちはちゅうごくまでりょこうしませんでした。 [りょこうする]

My uncle did not study English [language]. ....................... [Watashi no] oji eigo o benkyō shimasen deshita. [benkyō suru] [わたしの] おじはえいごをべんきょうしませんでした。 [べんきょうする]

My parents did not live in an apartment. ........................ [Watashi no] ryōshin wa apāto ni sumimasen deshita. [sumu] [わたしの]りょうしんはあばととにすみませんでした。 [すむ]

newspaper ........................................................................... shimbun しんぶん

I did not read any newspapers. ........................................... [Watashi wa] dono shimbun demo yomimasen deshita. [yomu] [わたしは] どのしんぶんでもよみませんでした。 [よむ]

Didn't your uncle find any magazines? .............................. Anata no ojisan wa dono zasshi demo mitsukeraremasen deshita ka. [mitsukaru] あなたのおじさんはどのざっしでもみつけられませんでしたか。 [みつかる]

Didn't you keep the vegetables? / Didn't you store ............ [Anata wa] yasai o shimatte okimasen deshita ka. [shimatte oku] [あなたは] やさいをしまっておきませんでしたか。 [しまっておく]

Those people didn't want nice things. .............................. Sono hitotachi wa ii mono o hoshigarimasen deshita. [hoshigaru] そのひとたちはいいものをほしがりませんでした。 [ほしがる]
That butcher shop did not cook the meat. Sono nikuya wa niku o yakimasen deshita.

Didn't your dog drink the water? Anata no inu wa mizu o nomimasen deshita. Anata no inu wa mizu o nomimasen deshita.

They didn't have (any) chicken. Karera wa toriniku o motteimasen deshita. Karera wa toriniku o motteimasen deshita.

The children did not look at the fish. Kodomotachi wa sakana o mimasen deshita. Kodomotachi wa sakana o mimasen deshita.

Your aunt didn't like the fruit. Anata no obāsan wa kudamono ga suki dewa arimasen deshita. Anata no obāsan wa kudamono ga suki dewa arimasen deshita.

That store did not make women's clothes. Sono mise wa onnamono no yōfuku o tsukurimasen deshita. Sono mise wa onnamono no yōfuku o tsukurimasen deshita.
Learn In Your Car®
JAPANESE
by Henry N. Raymond
& Jana Ney Walker

LEVEL THREE

Learn In Your Car is the only language learning system designed to teach a foreign language in your car as you drive, without the aid of a textbook. This booklet contains the entire recorded text for your reference so that you can see how the words are spelled. This booklet also contains additional explanations which will be helpful to you if you have trouble understanding some of the concepts.

ABOUT THIS COURSE

Learn In Your Car – Japanese, Level Three is a continuation of Learn in Your Car Japanese, Level Two. Level Three begins where Level Two ends. Level One is designed and organized primarily with the traveler in mind. Level Two continues with more complex vocabulary and grammar. Level Three introduces more advanced grammar and vocabulary for the continuing student. The following guidelines are used:

1. The basic premise is that communicating in a language requires learning words, phrases, and sentences; but you can't learn to communicate effectively in a language unless you know the individual meaning of each word.

2. The emphasis is on communication. Words, phrases, or sentences can be used to communicate. It is not always necessary to use a complete sentence to convey a thought.

3. It teaches the way a child learns. Children start by learning one-word sentences, then two-word sentences, etc. progressing to more complex sentences as they learn more vocabulary and grammar.
4. The important words you need to survive and get around are taught first. Grammar is taught with examples rather than rules.

5. Usually no more than one new word is introduced at a time. (Level Three occasionally introduces more than one word when it is easy to distinguish the new words.) This means you won't hear a sentence or a phrase and wonder which sound corresponds to which word. (Various forms of previously introduced verbs are used along with new words.)

6. No textbook is required. The fact that no more than one new word is introduced at a time enables you to use the CDs effectively without referring to a textbook. The CDs are designed to be used without a textbook so that you can use them while driving a car or while doing other things which require similar amounts of concentration.

7. Literal (word-for-word) translations are used as much as possible. This enables you to understand how a sentence or phrase is constructed and what the individual words mean.

**HOW TO USE**

**“LEARN IN YOUR CAR – JAPANESE”**

The lessons start immediately at the beginning of Disc One with no introduction so that you don't have to listen to the same introduction over and over again. Simply start the first disc and play through the first lesson. For each expression, you will hear the English version followed by a pause, then the Japanese translation followed by a pause, then the Japanese translation a second time followed by a third pause. At first, you will only be able to imitate the Japanese words in the two pauses after the Japanese translations (the second and third pauses). As you learn and progress, you will be able to recall and recite the Japanese version during the first pause before you hear the first Japanese translation. Be sure to speak the Japanese expressions out loud. The rate at which you learn will be significantly slower if you do not speak the Japanese expressions aloud.

Play the first lesson several times until you learn most of it. Then start playing the first followed by the second until you learn most of the second. As you progress, keep adding lessons. Always go back to the beginning to reinforce the material you have already learned. (As you progress through
the material, you may want to restart at some place other than the very beginning of the first disc. This is fine as long as you know all the material ahead of your starting point. Later lessons are designed with the assumption that you already know the material in earlier lessons.)

NOTES ABOUT THE TEXT

• Words which are underlined in phrases in the text have the same meaning in both English and Japanese. When a new word is introduced, it will usually be underlined.
• Literal translations are in parentheses with an “L.” such as: “(L. This is a literal translation)”
• Words in brackets [like this] are understood or indicate context, but are not heard on the discs.

NOTES ABOUT THE CDs

• The CD format, with each lesson on a separate track, allows you to instantly target the exact lesson you wish to review. The disc and track numbers for each lesson are listed in the Table of Contents.
• The Japanese and English translations are on separate channels. If you wish to hear only the Japanese translations, simply adjust the balance control of your CD player so that you hear only the Japanese version.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to thank Seiko Mikami, Yutaka Doi, and Noriko Ochiai, who helped me to make this audio production possible.

–Henry N. Raymond and Jana Ney Walker

Published and distributed by Penton Overseas, Inc.
© 2002, 1994 Penton Overseas. All rights reserved.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Disc One, Tracks 1-7:
1: Lesson 56... To Be Able to Do Something
2: Lesson 57... Some Important Concepts
3: Lesson 58... More Important Concepts
4: Lesson 59... The Present Progressive Tense
5: Lesson 60... Sentences, Present and Future Tense
6: Lesson 61... Using Direct Object Pronouns in Sentences
7: Lesson 62... Using Indirect Object Pronouns in Sentences

Disc Two, Tracks 1-7:
1: Lesson 63... More Indirect Object Pronouns
2: Lesson 64... Pronouns in Negative Sentences
3: Lesson 65... The Car
4: Lesson 66... Sentences with Important Words and Concepts
5: Lesson 67... More Sentences with Important Words and Concepts
6: Lesson 68... Needing To Do Something
7: Lesson 69... Someone Should Do Something

Disc Three, Tracks 1-9:
1: Lesson 70... Someone Might Do Something
2: Lesson 71... Days of the Week
3: Lesson 72... Months of the Year
4: Lesson 73... At the Doctor's Office
5: Lesson 74... At the Dinner Table
6: Lesson 75... Reflexive and Reciprocal Constructions
7: Lesson 76... Some Useful Sentences
8: Lesson 77... Clothes
9: Lesson 78... Colors
Japanese can be written in four different ways. This text uses “Rōmaji”, “Hiragana” and “Katakana” for all examples. “Rōmaji” uses the English alphabet to write Japanese words phonetically. “Hiragana” is a phonetic writing system which uses Japanese characters based on Japanese syllables. “Katakana” is a phonetic writing system used to write Japanese words which are derived from foreign languages. “Katakana” is similar to hiragana but uses a different set of Japanese characters. “Kanji” is a picture writing system based on Chinese picture language. “Rōmaji” is used primarily by foreigners because it is easier for them to understand. Different texts which use “Rōmaji” often spell words differently depending on which conventions they use and how the writer pronounces a given word. Spelling differences also exist within given conventions. This can be due to differences in how a word might be pronounced. For example, an “F” or an “H” may often be used interchangeably. Likewise, “-tu-” and “-tsu-” are often interchanged etc. A double vowel can be expressed by a single vowel with a line above it. (“oo” = “ō” or “aa” = “ā” etc.) In English, every word can be spelled either correctly or incorrectly. “Rōmaji” has more leeway when it comes to spelling. In “Rōmaji”, a given word can often be spelled several different ways, all of which would be correct.

The “Hiragana” and “Katakana” character charts which follow show all of the Hiragana and Katakana characters which exist. Virtually any Japanese word can be written using these phonetic characters. It’s not really very difficult to learn to read these characters. Almost any Japanese word which is written in Hiragana or Katakana can be converted to Rōmaji by using these charts. Likewise, words written in Rōmaji can be converted to Hiragana or Katakana through use of these charts. Try using these charts to convert a few simple words from Hiragana or Katakana to Rōmaji and back. You’ll find that it’s not really as difficult as it looks.
### Japanese Syllabary Chart

**HIRAGANA CHARACTERS**

**Basic Characters:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>あ</th>
<th>か</th>
<th>が</th>
<th>さ</th>
<th>ざ</th>
<th>た</th>
<th>だ</th>
<th>な</th>
<th>は</th>
<th>ぱ</th>
<th>ま</th>
<th>ら</th>
<th>わ</th>
<th>ん</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>ka</td>
<td>ga</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>za</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>ha</td>
<td>pa</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>wa</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>い</th>
<th>き</th>
<th>ぎ</th>
<th>し</th>
<th>じ</th>
<th>ち</th>
<th>ぢ</th>
<th>に</th>
<th>ひ</th>
<th>び</th>
<th>み</th>
<th>り</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ki</td>
<td>gi</td>
<td>shi</td>
<td>ji</td>
<td>chi</td>
<td>dži</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>hi</td>
<td>bi</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>ri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>う</th>
<th>く</th>
<th>ぐ</th>
<th>す</th>
<th>ず</th>
<th>つ</th>
<th>づ</th>
<th>る</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>gu</td>
<td>su</td>
<td>zu</td>
<td>tsu</td>
<td>zu</td>
<td>mu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>え</th>
<th>け</th>
<th>げ</th>
<th>せ</th>
<th>ぜ</th>
<th>で</th>
<th>で</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>ke</td>
<td>ge</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>ze</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>de</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>お</th>
<th>こ</th>
<th>ご</th>
<th>そ</th>
<th>ぞ</th>
<th>と</th>
<th>ど</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>ko</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>zo</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Combination Characters:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>や</th>
<th>きゃ</th>
<th>きや</th>
<th>しゃ</th>
<th>じゃ</th>
<th>ちゃ</th>
<th>ぢゃ</th>
<th>にゃ</th>
<th>ひゃ</th>
<th>びゃ</th>
<th>よや</th>
<th>りゃ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>kya</td>
<td>gya</td>
<td>sha</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>cha</td>
<td>džja</td>
<td>nya</td>
<td>hya</td>
<td>bya</td>
<td>pya</td>
<td>mya</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ゆ</th>
<th>きゅ</th>
<th>きゆ</th>
<th>しゅ</th>
<th>じゅ</th>
<th>ちゅ</th>
<th>ぢゅ</th>
<th>にゅ</th>
<th>ひゅ</th>
<th>びゅ</th>
<th>よゆ</th>
<th>りゅ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yu</td>
<td>kyu</td>
<td>gyu</td>
<td>shu</td>
<td>ju</td>
<td>chu</td>
<td>džju</td>
<td>nyu</td>
<td>hyu</td>
<td>byu</td>
<td>pyu</td>
<td>myu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>よ</th>
<th>きょ</th>
<th>ぎょ</th>
<th>しょ</th>
<th>じょ</th>
<th>ちょ</th>
<th>ちょ</th>
<th>にょ</th>
<th>ひょ</th>
<th>びょ</th>
<th>よよ</th>
<th>りよ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>kyo</td>
<td>gyo</td>
<td>sho</td>
<td>jo</td>
<td>cho</td>
<td>cho</td>
<td>nyo</td>
<td>hyo</td>
<td>byo</td>
<td>pyo</td>
<td>myo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>を</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Japanese Syllabary Chart
KATAKANA CHARACTERS
Basic Characters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ア</th>
<th>カ</th>
<th>ガ</th>
<th>サ</th>
<th>ザ</th>
<th>タ</th>
<th>ダ</th>
<th>ナ</th>
<th>ハ</th>
<th>バ</th>
<th>パ</th>
<th>マ</th>
<th>ラ</th>
<th>ウ</th>
<th>ワ</th>
<th>フェ</th>
<th>ン</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>ka</td>
<td>ga</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>za</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>na</td>
<td>ha</td>
<td>ba</td>
<td>pa</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>wa</td>
<td>fa</td>
<td>fi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ki</td>
<td>gi</td>
<td>shi</td>
<td>ji</td>
<td>chi</td>
<td>ji</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>hi</td>
<td>bi</td>
<td>pi</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>ri</td>
<td>fi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>ku</td>
<td>gu</td>
<td>su</td>
<td>zu</td>
<td>tsu</td>
<td>zu</td>
<td>nu</td>
<td>fu</td>
<td>bu</td>
<td>pu</td>
<td>mu</td>
<td>ru</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>ke</td>
<td>ge</td>
<td>se</td>
<td>ze</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>de</td>
<td>ne</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>pe</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>re</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>ko</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>zo</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>ho</td>
<td>bo</td>
<td>po</td>
<td>mo</td>
<td>ro</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Combination Characters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>や</th>
<th>きゃ</th>
<th>ぎゃ</th>
<th>しゃ</th>
<th>じャ</th>
<th>ぢャ</th>
<th>にャ</th>
<th>ひゃ</th>
<th>びゃ</th>
<th>ぴゃ</th>
<th>みャ</th>
<th>りャ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>kya</td>
<td>gya</td>
<td>sha</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>cha</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>nya</td>
<td>hya</td>
<td>bya</td>
<td>pya</td>
<td>mya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ゆ</td>
<td>きゅ</td>
<td>ぐィ</td>
<td>しゅ</td>
<td>じゅ</td>
<td>ちゅ</td>
<td>じゅ</td>
<td>にゅ</td>
<td>ひゅ</td>
<td>びゅ</td>
<td>ぴゅ</td>
<td>みゅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu</td>
<td>kyu</td>
<td>gyu</td>
<td>shu</td>
<td>ju</td>
<td>chu</td>
<td>ju</td>
<td>nyu</td>
<td>hyu</td>
<td>byu</td>
<td>pyu</td>
<td>myu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>よ</td>
<td>きょ</td>
<td>ぐィ</td>
<td>しょ</td>
<td>じょ</td>
<td>ちょ</td>
<td>じょ</td>
<td>にょ</td>
<td>ひょ</td>
<td>びょ</td>
<td>ぴょ</td>
<td>みょ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>kyo</td>
<td>gyo</td>
<td>sho</td>
<td>jo</td>
<td>cho</td>
<td>jo</td>
<td>nyo</td>
<td>hyo</td>
<td>byo</td>
<td>pyo</td>
<td>myo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LESSON 56 - TO BE ABLE TO DO SOMETHING

I can. / I am able to. / I will be able to. Watashi wa dekimasu. [dekiru]

eating thing / eating matter / eating affair taberu koto
taberu koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

I can eat. / I am able to eat. Watashi wa taberu koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

I can drink. / I am able to drink. Watashi wa nomu koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

I can eat breakfast. / I will be able to eat breakfast. [Watashi wa] asa gohan o taberu koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

I can not eat breakfast. / I am not able to eat. Watashi wa asa gohan o taberu koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

I was able to eat breakfast. [Watashi wa] asa gohan o taberu koto ga dekimasen. [dekiru]

I couldn't eat breakfast. / I was not able to eat. [Watashi wa] asa gohan o taberu koto ga dekimasen. [dekiru]

I can drink water. / Someone will be able to drink water. Mizu o nomu koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

You can not drink juice. / Someone cannot drink juice. Jyūsu o nomu koto ga dekimasen. [dekiru]

I can pay the bill. [Watashi wa] okanjō o harau koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

I can see Mr. Yamada. / He will be able to see Mr. Yamada. Yamada san o miru koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

Note: The phrases are written in Japanese with the corresponding English translation.
You can not see Mr. Yamada. / She won't be able to see Mr. Yamada.
Yamada san o miru koto ga dekimasen. [dekiru]

They can see the town from here. / We can see the town from here.
Koko kara machi o miru koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

My teacher can rent a car.
[Watashi no] sensei wa kuruma o kariru koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

Can I start now?
[Watashi wa] ima hajimeru koto ga dekimasu ka. [dekiru]

John, can (you) finish by tomorrow?
Jon san, ashita made ni sumasu koto ga dekimasu ka. [dekiru]

Mr. Yamada, (you) can sleep in the bedroom.
Yamada san, beddorumu ni neru koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

My father can sell the house.
[Watashi no] chichi wa uchi o uru koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru]

I could see Mr Yamada. / I was able to see Mr. Yamada.
Watashi wa Yamada san o miru koto ga dekimashita. [dekiru]

I could not see Mr Yamada. / I was not able to see Mr. Yamada.
Watashi wa Yamada san o miru koto ga dekimasen deshita. [dekiru]

In English, the ability to do something is expressed with the auxiliary "can" or "to be able" followed by the infinitive form of the main verb. The infinitive of a verb is the form which uses the sign "to" as in "to eat", "to buy", "to run" etc. The sign "to" is not used with the auxiliary "can." For example: "I can pay the bill" or "I am able to pay the bill." In Japanese this same concept can be expressed in two different ways. The first way, which is shown above, uses the verb "dekiru" (to be able to) in conjugated form (dekimasu, dekimasen, etc.) along with the dictionary form of the main verb and the word "koto" (thing / affair / matter):
Watashi wa asagohan o taberu koto ga dekimasu.

(As for me, I can eat breakfast.)

("wa" identifies the preceding word as the topic)
("o" identifies the preceding word as the direct object)
("ga" identifies the preceding word as the subject)

Another way of expressing the idea of being able to do something is demonstrated in the following examples:

I can eat. / I am able to eat. ........................................... Watashi wa taberaremasu. [taberu] ........................................... [わたしはたべられます。[たべる]
I can eat breakfast. / I will be able to eat breakfast. [Watashi wa] asa gohan o taberaremasu. [taberu] ........................................... [わたしは朝ごはんをたべられます。[たべる]
I cannot eat breakfast. / I won't be able to eat breakfast. [Watashi wa] asa gohan o taberaremasen. [taberu] ........................................... [わたしは朝ごはんをたべられません。[たべる]
I was able to eat breakfast. ........................................... [Watashi wa] asa gohan o taberaremashita. [taberu] ........................................... [わたしは朝ごはんをたべられました。[たべる]
I was not able to eat breakfast. ........................................... [Watashi wa] asa gohan o taberaremasen deshita. [taberu] ........................................... [わたしは朝ごはんをたべられませんでした。[たべる]
I can drink. / I am able to drink. ........................................... [Watashi wa] nomemasu. [nomu] ........................................... [わたしはのめます。[のむ]
I can drink water. ........................................... [Watashi wa] mizu o nomemasu. [nomu] ........................................... [わたしはみずをのめます。[のむ]
They won't be able to drink juice. ........................................... [Karera wa] jyūsu o nomemasen. [nomu] ........................................... [かれらはジュースをのめません。[のむ]
I can pay the bill. .......................................................... [Watashi wa] okanjō o haraemasu. .......................................[わたしは]おかんじょうをはらえます。[支払い]

My teacher can rent a car. ...........................................[Watashi no] sensei wa kuruma o .................................kariraremasu. [かりる]

Can I start now? ..........................................................[Watashi wa] ima hajimeraremasu ka. ..............................[わたしは]いまはじめられますか。

John, can (you) finish by tomorrow? ...........................Jon san, ashiata made ni sumaserarematsu ka. [すませる]

My father can sell the house. .......................................[Watashi no] chichi wa ie o uremasu. [うる]

I can see Mr. Yamada. ..................................................[Watashi wa] Yamada san o miraremasu. ..........................[わたしは]やまださんをみられます。[見る]

I cannot see Mr. Yamada. .............................................[Watashi wa] Yamada san o miraremasen. ........................[わたしは]やまださんをみられません。[見る]

You can see the town from here. .................................[Anata wa] koko kara machi o miraremasu. ........................[あなたは]ここからまちをみられます。[見る]

I could see Mr Yamada. / I was able to see Mr. .........[Watashi wa] Yamada san o miraremashta. ..........................[わたしは]やまださんをみられました。[見る]

I could not see Mr Yamada. / I was not able to .........[Watashi wa] Yamada san o miraremasen deshita. [miru]

see Mr. Yamada.
This second way of expressing the idea of "can" or "to be able to" uses only the main verb but with a different ending. This is called the "potential mood". The potential mood (formal, indicative) is formed by adding "-emasu" to the stem of verbs which form their stems by dropping the final "-u" from the dictionary form, and by adding "-raremasu" to the stem of verbs which form their stems by dropping the final "-ru". Negatives and past tenses are then formed regularly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DICT-IONARY FORM</th>
<th>PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSE AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>PRESENT AND FUTURE TENSE NEGATIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>PAST TENSE NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(see)</td>
<td>(can see)</td>
<td>(can not see)</td>
<td>(could see)</td>
<td>(could not see)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(will be able to see)</td>
<td>(won't be able to see)</td>
<td>(was able to see)</td>
<td>(was not able to see)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miru</td>
<td>mi (raremasu)</td>
<td>mi (raremasen)</td>
<td>mi (raremashta)</td>
<td>mi (raremasen deshita)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harau</td>
<td>hara (emasu)</td>
<td>hara (emasen)</td>
<td>hara (emashita)</td>
<td>hara (emasen deshita)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SOME IMPORTANT CONCEPTS

He is tall. [L. He, stature, tall is.]

John is short. [L. He, stature is short.]

That's a very high building.

It's a short distance from here.

Turn on the light, please.

Turn off the light, please.

Anyone can buy a car.

One can't go.

One can't go there. / You can't go there.

Do you go there often?

No, never. [L. No, Doing thing doesn't exist.]

He is going there right away.

They are going together.

to think about

I need to think. / Think time is necessary.

I need to think about it. [L. I, it about, think time necessary is.]

Is this correct?

This is not correct.

You are right. / You are correct.

TAISETSUNA KOTO

Kare wa sei ga takai desu.

Jon san wa sei ga hikui desu.

Sore wa totemo takai biru desu.

Sore wa koko kara sugu desu.

Denki o tsukete kudasai. [tsukeru]

Denki o keshite kudasai. [kesu]

Daredemo kuruma o kaemasu. [kau]

Ikemasen. [iku]

Soko ni ikemasen. [iku]

[Anata wa] soko ni yoku ikimasu ka. [iku]

Iie, shita koto ga arimasen.

Kare wa sugu soko ni ikimasu.

Karera wa issho ni ikimasu.

Kangaeru / kangaemasu

Kangaeru jikan ga hitsuyō desu.

[Watashi wa] sore ni tsuite kangaeru jikan ga hitsuyō desu.

Kore wa tadashii desu ka.

Kore wa tadashiku nai desu.

Anata wa tadashii desu.
He is wrong. / He is in error. .......................... Kare wa machigattemasu. [machigau] .......................... かれはまちがってます。[まちがう]

It's the right address. .................................. Sore wa tadashii jūshō desu. .................................. それはただししいじゅうしょうです。

This is not the right road. ............................. Kono michi wa tadashiku arimasen. ............................. このみちはただしくありません。

This is the wrong road. .................................. Kono michi wa machigattemasu. .................................. このみちはまちがっています。

Whose glass is this? ..................................... Kore wa dare no gurasu desu ka. .................................. これはだれのグラスですか。

to look like / to resemble ............................. niru ................................................................. にる

It looks like this but [is] bigger. ...................... Kore wa nitemasu ga motto ōkii desu. ...................... これはにてますがもっとおおきいです。[にる]

Look at him (please.) ..................................... Kare o mite kudasai. [miru] .................................. かれをみてください。[みる]

That over there is an old building. ................... Are wa furui tatemono desu. ............................... あれはふるいたてものですね。

She is an old woman. .................................... Kanojo wa rōjo desu. ........................................... かのじょはろうじょです。

He is an old man. ......................................... Kare wa rōjin desu. ........................................... かれはろうじんです。

She is a young lady. ..................................... Kanojo wa wakai josei desu. .................................. かのじょはわかいいじょうせいです。

That's my new car. ....................................... Sore wa watashi no shinsha desu. ............................. それはわたしの新しいです。

Have you seen my new truck? .......................... [Anata wa] watashi no atarashii torakku o mimashita ka. [miru] ............................. [あなたは]わたしのあたりんとらっくをみたか。

They bought some new clothes. ......................... [Karera wa] ikutsuka atarashii yōfuku o kaimashita. [kau] .......................................................... [かれらは]いくつかあたりいんようですよくをかいました。

Everything is brand new. ................................ Subete ga shinpin desu. ........................................ すべてがしんぴんです。

This lesson and the next one are designed to show how the Japanese language handles some basic concepts such as: "old and new", "old and young", "right and wrong", "correct and incorrect", "sitting and standing", and a few other things that people need to know in order to function in everyday situations.
MORE IMPORTANT CONCEPTS

how often .................................................. dono kurai

every how often [L. how often every] .................. dono kurai goto ni

[Every] how often does the bus come? .................. Dono kurai goto ni basu wa kimasu ka.

[kuru]

[Every] how often does the bus leave for town? / ............................................. Basu wa dono kurai goto ni machi ni

[Every] how often does the bus go to town? .............. ikimasu ka. [iku]

[It's] every twenty minutes. .............................................. Nijūppun goto desu.

Sit down, please. .............................................. Suwatte kudasai. [suwaru]

Stand up, please. .............................................. Tatte kudasai. [tatsu]

I want to sit at the table. ........................................ Watashi wa tēburu ni suwaritai desu.

[suwaru]

[Watashi wa] sumi ni tachitai desu. [tatsu] .............. [わたしさすみにたたたいです。]

[Watashi wa] ikkai ni tachitai desu. [tatsu] .............. [わたしはいっかいにたたたいです。]

the ground floor / the first floor ............................................................ ikkai

In Japan, the second floor is above the ground .......... Nippon dewa ikkai wa ikkai no ue ni

[aru]

The basement is below the ground floor. .............. Chika shitsu wa ikkai no shita ni arimasu

[aru]

I dislike the rain. / I hate the rain. ...................... [Watashi wa] ame ga kirai desu.

[to fall / to come down ........................................ furu

It's raining. / Rain is falling. .......................... Ame ga futteimasu. [furu]

Is it still raining? ................................................ Mada ame ga futteimasu ka. [furu]
There’s the sun. ................................................................. Soko ni taïyô ga arimasu. [aru] ........................................ そこにたいようがあります。[ある]
clear up ................................................................. harete ............................................................... はれて
clear up will come [L. clear up come] ................................................................. harete kuru ............................................................... はれてくる
I think. / I suppose. / Perhaps. / Probably. ................................................................. Deshô. ............................................................... でしょう。
It is going to be sunny. / It will clear up I assure you. ................................................................. Harete kuru deshô. ............................................................... はれてくるでしょう。
to go for a walk / to take a walk ................................................................. sampo suru ............................................................... さんぽする。
Professor Yamada went for a walk. ................................................................. Yamada sensei wa sampo shimashita. ................................................................. やまだせんせいはさんぽしました。[さんぽする]
I took a ride in a car. ................................................................. Watashi wa kuruma ni norimashita. [noru] ................................................................. わたしはくるマにのりました。
a pretty young girl ................................................................. kawaii wakai onna no ko ................................................................. かわいいかわいいおんなのか
What a pretty young girl! [I suppose.] ................................................................. Nante kawaii wakai onna no ko deshô. ................................................................. なんてかわいいかわいいおんなのこでしょう。
That over there is an ugly building. ................................................................. Are wa kitanai tatemono desu. ................................................................. あれはきたないてもののです。
This book is about France. ................................................................. Kono hon wa Furansu ni tsuite desu. ................................................................. このほんはフランスについてです。
We want to find something cheaper. / Someone wants to look for something cheaper. ................................................................. Nanika motto yasui mono o sagashitai ................................................................. なにかもっと安いものをさがしたいです。[さがす]
a kilogram ................................................................. kiro ............................................................... キロ
Give me two kilograms, please. / Two kilograms please. ................................................................. Ni kiro kudasai. ............................................................... にキロください。
Bring (me) some stamps, please. ................................................................. Ikuraka no kitte o motte kite kudasai. ................................................................. いくらかのきってをもってきてください。[motte kuru]
LESSON 59 - THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

NANI O SHITEIMASU KA.

Watashi wa mainichi jimusho de hirugohan o tabemasu. [taberu]

[Watashi wa] shokuji o tabeteimasu. [taberu]

[Watashi wa] shokuji o tabeteimasen. [taberu]

[Watashi wa] maiban shokuji no mae ni kakuteru o nomimasu. [nomu]

[Watashi wa] ima kakuteru o nondeimasu. [nomu]

Jon san wa maitsuki jimushi ni haraimasu. [harau]

Jon san wa ima okanjō o haratteimasu. [harau]

Dareka wa kono monogoto o haratteimasu. [harau]

Haha wa watashi no kuruma o utteimasu. [uru]

Suzuki san wa apāto o kariteimasu. [kariru]

Suzuki san wa jimusho o kariteimasen. [kariru]
I'm looking for the train to Tokyo. ........................................ [Watashi wa] Tōkyō made no densha o ............ sagashiteimasu. [sagasu]

I am writing a letter to my parents. .................................. [Watashi wa watashi no] ryōshin ni ............... tegami o kaiteimasu. [kaku]

He is learning Japanese [language]. ................................... Kare wa Nihongo o naratteimasu. [narau] ........... かれはにほんごをならっています。[ならう]

The teacher is leaving now. .................................................. Sensei wa ima shuppatsu shiteimasu. ............... shuppatsu o suru

The doctor is not leaving yet. ............................................... Oisha san wa mada shuppatsu shiteimasen. .......... shuppatsu o suru

The students are speaking in German [language]. ................... Gakuseitachi wa Doitsugo de ......................... hanashiteimasu. [hanasu]

That man is studying Japanese. ........................................... Sono otoko no hito wa Nihongo o benkyo .............. shiteimasu. [benkyo suru]

I'm living in the countryside. ............................................. Watashi wa inaka ni sundeimasu. [sumu] .......... わたしはいなかにすんでいます。[すむ]

I'm cutting the bread. ...................................................... [Watashi wa] pan o kitteimasu. [kiru] ............. わたしはパンを切っています。[きる]

I'm not cutting the paper. .................................................. [Watashi wa] kami o kitteimasen. [kiru] .......... わたしはかみを切っていません。[きる]

My family is traveling to China. ......................................... [Watashi no] kazoku wa Chugoku ni ................................ ryokō o shiteimasu. [ryokō o suru] お子さんたちはちゅうごくに 旅行をしています。[りょこうする]
My parents are not traveling to Australia.  

I am seated. / I'm sitting down.

I'm standing up.

That boy is running to school.

John's girlfriend is walking to work.

Tina's boyfriend is visiting his boss.

He's holding the chair.

He is not holding the painting.

He's not listening.
The progressive form of a verb is used to talk about actions that are progressing or continuing at the time indicated by the tense. In English, there are six tenses ("present", "past", "future", "present perfect", "past perfect" and "future perfect"). Each of these tenses has a progressive form. For example, "I am working.", "I was working.", "I will be working.", "I have been working.", "I had been working." and "I will have been working." The progressive form of the present tense is used frequently to talk about things that are happening "now" or action that is continuing. It is also used to express a state of being.

When the present progressive is used to express a state of being, it often expresses the idea of something that still is in effect. For example, the sentence "Watashi wa kare o shitteimasu." means something like "I know him and I still know him."

The present progressive in Japanese cannot be used to talk about future events as it is in English. For example, one cannot say "I'm leaving tomorrow." or "He's buying a house next year."

The polite form of the present progressive is formed by adding the appropriate form of the verb "iru" (masu) to the gerund of the principle verb. For example, the gerund of the verb "to eat" (taberu / tabemasu) is "tabete". "Am eating" is then "tabeteimasu". Likewise, "am not eating" is "tabeteimasen".

CONJUGATED FORM (formal, indicative)
- tabemasu
- nomimasu
- haramasu
- kaimasu

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE FORM
- tabeteimasu
- nondeimasu
- haratteimasu
- katteimasu
LESSON 60 - GENZAI TO MIRAI

FUTURE TENSE

Jana will pay for the drinks. / Jana will pay the drink money.  
[Japanese: Jana san wa nomimono no okane o haraimasu. [harau]]

I drink wine.  
[Japanese: Watashi wa wain o nomimasu. [nomu]]

I am taking the airplane. / Someone will catch the airplane.  
[Japanese: Hikoki o tsukamaemasu. [tsukamaeru]]

I take sugar in my coffee. / Someone puts sugar in the coffee.  
[Japanese: Kohi ni sato o iremasu. [ireru]]

I am sleeping in that room.  
[Japanese: Watashi wa sono heya de neteimasu. [nemuru]]

I am making a cup of coffee. / I am creating a cup of coffee.  
[Japanese: Watashi wa ippai no kohi o tsukuteimasu. [tsukuru]]

I live in Honshu. / Someone is residing in Honshu.  
[Japanese: Honshu ni sundeimasu. [sumu]]

I am arriving about noon. / Someone will arrive about noon.  
[Japanese: Hiru goro tsukimasu. [tsuku]]

Are you doing the laundry?  
[Japanese: Anata wa sentaku o shiteimasu ka. [suru]]

Are you paying the bill? / Are you going to pay the bill?  
[Japanese: Anata wa okanjō o haraimasu ka. [harau]]

What are you looking for?  
[Japanese: Anata wa nani o sagashiteimasu ka. [sagasu]]

Are you drinking juice? / Is he drinking juice?  
[Japanese: Jyūsu o nondeimasu ka. [nomu]]
You're taking your suitcase, aren't you? / You will take the suitcase, won't you?
[Anata wa] sūtsukēsu o motteikimasu ne. [motteiku]
[あなたは]スーツケースをもっていきすね。[もっていく]
You are taking the children, aren't you? / You will go with the children, won't you?
[Anata wa] kodomotachi o tsurete ikimasu ne. [iku]
[あなたは]こどもたちをつれていきますね。[いく]
You are not sleeping well. ...........................................[Anata wa] yoku neteimasen. [neru]
[あなたは]よくねていません。[ねる]
What are you doing? ...........................................[Anata wa] nani o shiteimasu ka. [suru]
[あなたは]なにをしているか。[する]
My father will pay for the meal. .................................[Watashi no] chichi wa shokujidai o haraimasu. [harau]
[わたしの]ちちはしょくじだいをはらいます。[はらう]
He is looking for a job. ...........................................Kare wa shigoto o sagashiteimasu.
[さがす]
She drinks a lot. ....................................................Kanojo wa sugoku nomimasu. [nomu]
[かのじょはすごくのみます。[のむ]
Bus number five goes to the beach. / To go to the beach, it's the number 5 bus.
Bichi ni iku basu wa go ban desu. ...................................
[ビーチにいくバスはごはんです。]
My nephew is sleeping in the bedroom. ...................[Watashi no] oi wa beddorūmu de
[ねています。[ねる]
[ねてます。]
My niece will make tea tomorrow. ..........................Ashita watashi no mei wa ocha o
[つくります。[つくる]
[つくります。]
My grandchildren live in Spain. .............................Watashi no mago wa Supein ni sundeimasu.
[す Sundera][すのまごはスペインに住んでいます。[すむ]
We are leaving by airplane. / We will go by airplane.  ..[Watashitachī wa] hikōki de ikimasu.
[いく]
We will pay for your ticket. ...................................Watashitachī wa anata no kippū o
[haraiimasu. [harau]
We are paying cash. / Someone is paying cash. ..........Genkin de haratteimasu. [harau]
We are looking for the right road. / Someone is discovering the right road. We drink fruit juice. / They drink fruit juice. The adults are drinking beer.

We are taking our luggage with us. / We will carry the luggage with us.

We will take our children with us.

We are sleeping at the hotel tonight. / We will sleep at the hotel tonight.

We are making dinner this evening. / We will make dinner this evening.

We're buying a gift for each child. / We will buy a gift for each child.

Are you guys leaving on the next train? / Will you people go on the next train?

Are you people paying the restaurant bill?

Are you guys looking for something? / Are they looking for something?

You people are drinking our drinks.
It takes time.

You people take too much time.

Are you sleeping? / Are they sleeping?

Can they see the clock from here?

They are leaving tomorrow. / They will depart

My parents pay for everything.

They are looking for their husbands.

They are drinking with their friends.

They take too many things with them. / They will carry too many things.

My friends sleep at my house sometimes.

They are making lunch.

They live with our parents. / They are living with our parents.
LESSON 61 - USING DIRECT OBJECT
PRONOUNS IN SENTENCES

They see me. .................................................. Karera wa watashi o mimasu. [miru] かれらはわたしをみます。[みる]
They're looking for you. .................................. Karera wa anata o sagashiteimasu. [sagasu] かれらはあなたをさがしています。[さがす]
Mr. Takahashi is looking at her. ......................... Takahashi san wa kanojo o miteimasu. たかはしさんはかのじょをみています。[みる]
I know him. .................................................. Watashi wa kare o shitteimasu. [shiru] わたしはかれをしっています。[しる]
They're renting it. .......................................... Karera wa sore o kariteimasu. [kariru] かれらはそれをかりています。[かりる]
They love us. .............................................. [Karera wa] watashitachi o aishiteimasu. かれらはわたしたちをあいして います。[あいする]
They know you people. .................................... [Karera wa] anatagata o shitteimasu. かれらはあなたたちをしっています。[しる]
We understand them. (all males or mixed) ........... Watashitachi wa karera o wararimasu. わたしたちはかれらをわかります。[わかる]
We visit them. (all females) ............................. Watashitachi wa kanojora o hōmon shimasu. [hōmon suru] わたしたちはかのじょらをほうもんします。[ほうもんする]
We smell them. (objects) ............................... Watashitachi wa sore o nioi o kagimasu. [kagimashu] わたしたちはそれらのにおいをか ぎます。[かぎます]
I love you. .................................................. [Watashi wa] anata o aishiteimasu. [ai suru] わたしはあなたをあいしています。[あいする]
I receive. / I will receive. / I will eat or drink. .......... [Watashi wa] itadakimasu. [itadaku] わたしはいただきます。[いただ く]
I would like it. ...........................................[Watashi wa] sore o itadakimasu. [itadaku] ..........................[わたしたちはそれをいただきます。] 例する]
of that / of those / of them ..........................sono naka no ..................................................そのなかの
I would like one of them ................................Watashi wa sono naka no hitotsu o itadakimasu. [itadaku] ..........................................................わたしたちはそのなかのひとつをいただきます。[いただく]
I would like two of them ................................Watashi wa sono naka no futatsu o itadakimasu. [itadaku] ..........................................................わたしたちはそのなかのふたつをいただきます。[いただく]
I saw you. / Someone saw you ................................Anata o mimashita. [miru] ....................................あなたをみました。[みる]
They saw you guys. / Someone saw you people ........Anatagata o mimashita. [miru] ................................あなたがたをみました。[みる]
You said it. / You said so. ..................................Anata wa sō iimashita. [iu] ........................................あなたはそういました。[いう]
He did it. / He did so. .......................................Kare wa sō shimasu. [suru] ......................................かれはそうしました。[する]
We rented them. [from someone] .........................[Watashitachi wa] sorera o karimashita. [kariru] ...........................................わたしたちはそれらをかりました。[かりる]
He rented it. [from someone] ..............................[Kare wa] sore o karimashita. [kariru] ..................................かれはそれをかりました。[かりる]
Do you people know her? ..................................Anatagata wa kanojo o shitteimasu ka. [shiru] ........................................あなたたちは彼女を知ってますか。[しる]
I like wine. [L. I, wine, liked is.] .......................Watashi wa wain ga suki desu. [suku] .........................わたしたちはワインが好きです。[すき]
I love it. [L. I, it, liked a lot, is.] ......................[Watashi wa] sore ga daisuki desu. ......................................わたしたちはそれが大好きです。[だいすき]
I like you. [L. I, you, liked, is.] .........................Watashi wa anata ga suki desu. [suku] ......................................わたしたちはあなたが好きです。[すき]
I would like a receipt, please. ..........................[Watashi wa] reshiito o itadakimasu. [itadaku] ......................................わたしたちはレシートをいただきます。[いただく]
I would like some. .........................................[Watashi wa] ikuraka itadakimasu. [itadaku] ........................................わたしたちはいくらかいただきます。[いただく]
Do you have any? ...........................................[Anata wa] hokani motteimasu ka. [motte iru] ..................................あなたはほかにもっていますか。[もっている]
A direct object is the noun or pronoun which receives the action of a verb. For example, in the sentence "I bought a car.", the noun "car" is the direct object because it is the thing which was bought. Likewise, in the sentences "He sees it." and "He sees him.", the pronouns "it" and "him" are direct objects because they are the things which are seen. In Japanese, there is no distinction between objective case pronouns (pronouns used as objects of verbs) and nominative case pronouns (pronouns used as subjects of sentences). This is different from English. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENGLISH NOMINATIVE CASE PRONOUN</th>
<th>ENGLISH OBJECTIVE CASE PRONOUN</th>
<th>JAPANESE EQUIVALENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>watashi / watakushi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>anata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>kare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>kanojo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>sore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>watashitachi / watakushitachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you (plural)</td>
<td>you (plural)</td>
<td>anatagata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>karera/kanojora/kanojotachi/sorera</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Japanese, the particle which follows a noun or pronoun identifies it as either the subject, topic, direct object, indirect object etc. of the sentence. The pronoun is always the same. A direct object pronoun is identified by the particle "o" which follows it.

An English sentence which contains a direct object will often have a Japanese equivalent which does not contain one. For example, the English sentence "I like wine." has a direct object "wine". The Japanese equivalent "Watashi wa wain ga suki desu." is constructed differently and means something like "As for me, wine is liked." In this case, "wine" (wain) is the subject of the sentence. The particle "ga" identifies the preceding word as the subject. The particle "wa" identifies the preceding word as the topic of the sentence.

The sentence "Itadakimasu." means "I will receive or partake". It is a much more polite way of requesting things.
LESSON 62 - USING INDIRECT
OBJECT PRONOUNS IN SENTENCES

I'm giving Paul a gift. / I'm giving a gift to Paul.
Watashi wa Poru san ni okurimono o agetaimasu. [ageru]

I'm giving it to Paul.
[Watashi wa] Poru san ni sore o agetaimasu. [ageru]

I'm giving him a gift. / I'm giving a gift to him.
[Watashi wa] kare ni okurimono o agetaimasu. [ageru]

I'm giving her a gift. / I'm giving a gift to her.
[Watashi wa] kanojo ni okurimono o agetaimasu. [ageru]

I'm buying you a gift. / I'm buying a gift for you.
Watashi wa anata no tame ni okurimono o katteimasu. [kau]

I'm buying us a gift. / I'm buying a gift for us.
[Watashi wa] watashitachi no tame ni okurimono o katteimasu. [kau]

I'm buying you people a gift. / I'm buying a gift for you people.
[Watashi wa] anatagata no tame ni okurimono o katteimasu. [kau]

I'm giving them a gift.
[Watashi wa] karera ni okurimono o agetaimasu. [ageru]

I'm giving it to him.
Watashi wa kare ni sore o agetaimasu. [ageru]

I'm buying it for her.
[Watashi wa] kanojo no tame ni sore o katteimasu. [kau]

---

JUGYŌ 62 - DAREKA NI/
DAREKA NO TAME NI

じゅぎょう62- だれかに/
だれかのために

わたしたちはポールさんにおくりもの
をあげています。[あげる]

[わたしたちはポールさんにそれを見ています。[あげる]

[わたしたちはかれにおくりものを見ています。[あげる]

わたしたちはかのじょにおくりものを見ています。[あげる]

わたしたちはあなたのためにおくりものを見ています。[あげる]

わたしたちはわたしたちのためにおくりものを見ています。[あげる]

わたしたちはあなたがたのためにおくりものを見ています。[あげる]

わたしたちはかれらにおくりものを見ています。[あげる]

[わたしたちはかれにそれを見ています。[あげる]

[わたしたちはかのじょのためにそれを見ています。[あげる]
I'm giving it to you. ........................................... [Watashi wa] anata ni sore o ageteimasu. .............. [わたしは]あなたにそれをあげています。[あげる]

Paul is buying it for me. ....................................... Poru san wa watashi no tame ni sore o ............... ボールさんはわたしのためにそれをかっています。[かう]

katteimasu. [kau]

An indirect object is the noun or pronoun which the action of the verb is done "to" or "for". For example, in the sentence "He's buying me a gift." which means exactly the same thing as "He's buying a gift for me.", the direct object is "gift" because it is the thing which is being bought. "Gift" receives the action of the verb. The pronoun "me" is the indirect object because "me" is the person for whom the gift is bought. Likewise in the sentence "He's giving me a gift." (which means the same as "He's giving a gift to me."), "gift" is again the direct object. "Me" is the indirect object because "me" is the person to whom the gift is given.

In Japanese, there is no difference between pronouns used as topics, subjects, direct objects or indirect objects. The pronouns remain the same. The particles which follow the nouns or pronouns identify them as to their grammatical function (i.e. whether they are subjects, topics, direct objects, indirect objects etc.) Indirect objects are usually followed by the particle "ni" which is similar to the English preposition "to" or "no tame ni" which is similar to "for" or "intended for" in English.

LESSON 63 - .......................................................... JUGYŌ 63 - .................................................. じゅぎょう63-
MORE INDIRECT OBJECT かんせつなだけめいし
PRONOUNS KANSETSU NO DAIMEISHI

I'm bringing the luggage to my parents. .................................. Watashi wa [watashi no] ryōshin ni ................ Watashi wa [わたしの]りょうしんに
nimotsu o motteikimasu. [motteiku] にもつをもっていきます。[もっていく]
I’m bringing **them** to my parents. ................................................. [Watashi wa watashi no] ryōshin ni sorera o mottekimasu. [motteiku]

I’m bringing **the luggage.** ................................................................. [Watashi wa] karera ni nimotsu o mottekimasu. [motteiku]

I’m bringing **it to them.** (Feminine) .................................................. [Watashi wa] kanojō ni sore o mottekimasu. [motteiku]

to give (when the giver is someone other than the speaker) kuremasu [kureru] ........................................................................................................ くれます。[くれる]

He gave **me** a gift. .................................................................................. Kare wa watashi ni okurimono o kuremashtita. [kureru]

She bought **him** a gift. ............................................................................ Kanojo wa kare no tame ni okurimono o kaimashita. [kau]

He rented a car. / He rented a car for her. ............................................ Kare wa kanojo no tame ni kuruma o kaimashita. [kariru]

He rented a car. / He rented a car to her. ............................................. Kare wa kanojo ni kuruma o kashimashita. [kasu]

He **spoke** to them. .................................................................................. Kare wa karera ni hanashimashita. [hanasu]

You sold a shirt **to my father.** ............................................................... Anata wa [watashi no] chichi ni shatsu o urimashita. [uru]

You sold **him** a shirt. ............................................................................. [Anata wa] kare ni shatsu o urimashita. [uru]

Did you sell it to my father? ..................................................................... [Anata wa watashi no] chichi ni sore o urimashita ka. [uru]
Did you buy them for my mother? ........................................... Anata wa watashi no haha no tame ni sorera o kaimashita ka. [kau]
You sold it to her. .............................................................. Anata wa kanojo ni sore o urimashita. [uru]
Did you sell it for them? ...................................................... Anata wa karera no tame ni sore o urimashita ka. [uru]
You sold them to me. .......................................................... Anata wa watashi ni sorera o urimashita. [uru]
You sold five of them. ....................................................... Anata wa sorera no uchi itsutsu urimashita. [uru]

LESSON 64 - ................................................................. JUGYŌ 64 - ............................................................. じゅぎょう64-
PRONOUNS IN NEGATIVE HITEI TEKI NA DAIMEISHI ひていてきだいめいし
SENTENCES
He does not want it. / He won't want it. ................................... Kare wa sore o hoshiku wa nai desu. かれはそれをほしくはないです。
We don't want them. / They will not want them. ....................... Sorera o hoshiku wa nai desu. それらをほしくはないです。
I would not like any. / He doesn't want any. ........................... Ikura mo hoshiku arimasen. いくらもほしくありません。
I don't like it. / He doesn't like that ..................................... Sore o suki dewa arimasen. それをすきではありません。
I'm not giving it to Paul. ...................................................... [Watashi wa] Pōru san ni sore o ageteimasen. [ageru] わたしはポールさんのにそれをあげています。[あげる]
I don't give gifts to him. / They won't give him a ..................... Kare ni okurimono o agemasen. [ageru] かれにおくりものをおあげません。 [あげる]

I'm not giving it to her. .........................................................[Watashi wa] kanojo ni sore o ageimasen. ...........................................[わたしは]かのじょにそれをあげていません。[あげる]
'a geru]
I did not give a gift to him. ......................................................[Watashi wa] kare ni okurimono o agemasen deshita. [ageru]
He did not give me a gift. ...........................................................[Kare wa] watashi ni okurimono o kuremasen deshita. [kureru]
I don't buy them. / They will not buy them. .......................................Sorera o kaimasen. [kau]
I didn't buy it for her. ...............................................................[Watashi wa] kanojo no tame ni sore o kaimasen. [kau]
I'm not buying it for her. ..............................................................[Watashi wa] kanojo no tame ni sore o katteimasen. [kau]
She did not buy him a gift. ..........................................................Kanojo wa kare no tame ni okurimono o kaimasen deshita. [kau]
I don't bring them to my parents. / We won't bring them to our parents. (objects) ...........................................Ryōshin ni sorera o motteikimasen. [motte iku]
I'm not bringing the luggage to my parents. .........................................[Watashi wa watashi no] ryōshin ni nimotsu o motteitteimasen. [motte iku]
I did not bring them the luggage. ....................................................[Watashi wa] karera ni nimotsu o motteikimasen deshita. [motte iku]
I'm not bringing it to them. .............................................................[Watashi wa] kare ni sore o motteitteimasen. [motte iku]
He's not selling them. / We aren't selling them. ..................................Sorera o utteimasen. [uru]
She won't sell him a shirt. .............................................................Kanojo wa kare ni shatsu o urimasen. [uru]
She didn't sell it to him. ...............................................................Kare wa kanojo ni shatsu o urimasen deshita. [kureru]
You did not sell it to my father.


Anata wa watashi no chichi ni sore o urimasen deshita. [uru]

You did not sell them to my father.


[Anata wa watashi no] chichi ni sorera o urimasen deshita. [uru]

Didn't you sell it to him?


[Anata wa] kare ni sore o urimasen deshita ka. [uru]

He is not selling them to her.


Kare wa kanojo ni sorera o utteimasen. [uru]

You did not sell five of them.


Anata wa sorera no uchi itsutsu o urimasen deshita. [uru]

We did not rent them. [from someone]


[Watashitachi wa] sorera o karimasen deshita. [kariru]

We did not rent a car to her.


[Kare wa] kanojo ni kuruma o kashimasen deshita. [kasu]

I don’t see him.


[Watashi wa] kare o mimasen. [miru]

I did not see you.


[Watashi wa] anata o mimasen deshita. [miru]

He did not do it. / They didn’t do that.


Sore o shimasen deshita. [suru]

You did not say it. / He didn’t say that.


Sore o iimasen deshita. [iuru]

He did not speak to them.


Kare wa karera to hanashimasen deshita. [hanasu]

We did not take him to the movie theater.


Watashitachi wa kare o eigakan ni tsurete kimasen deshita. [tsurete kuru]
LESSON 65 - THE CAR ........................ JUGYO 65 - KURUMA ........................ じゅぎょう65-くるま

to drive / to do vehicle operation ........................ unten suru ........................ うんてんする
My older sister drives a car. ......................... Watashi no ane wa kuruma o unten shimasu. [unten suru] わたしのあねはくるまをうんてんします。[うんてんする]
Mr. Yamada is driving my car. ..................... Yamada san wa watashi no kuruma o unten shiteimasu. [unten suru] やまださんはわたしのくるまをうんてんしています。[うんてんする]
She can drive ............................................. Kanojo wa unten suru koto ga dekimasu. [dekiru] かのじょはうんてんすることができます。[できる]
a way / a method / a means .......................... shikata .......................... しかた
Do you know how to drive? / Do you know the method of vehicle operation? Anata wa unten no shikata o shitteimasu. [shiru] あなたはうんてんのしかたをしっていますか。[しる]
Yes, I drove my parent’s car last week. ........ Hai, senshū [watashi wa watashi no ryōshin no kuruma o unten shimashita. [unten suru] はい、せんしゅう[わたしたしはわたしの]りょうしんのくるまをうんてんしました。[うんてんする]
Yesterday I drove to the school ...................... Kinō [watashi wa] gakko made unten shimashita. [unten suru] きのう[わたしたしが]がっこうまでうんてんしました。[うんてんする]
But now the motor doesn’t work. .................... Dakedo ima mōtā ga ugokimasen. [ugoku] だけどいまモーターがうごきません。[うごく]
You need some gasoline. / Gasoline is a necessity ........................ Gasorin ga hitsuyō desu. ガソリンがあつようです。
I need some oil too. / Oil also is a necessity. ........ Oiru mo hitsuyō desu. おイルもあつようです。
Check the oil, please. .............................. Oiru o shirabete kudasai. [shiraberu] オイルをしらべてください。[しばれ]
Is there a service station nearby? / Is there a gas station nearby? Chikaku ni gasorin sutando ga arimasu ka. [aru] ちかんにガソリンスタンドがありますか。[ある]
It's somewhere near here. / It's in this station Chikaku ni gasorin sutando no yūki ni arimasu. [aru] ちかんにガソリンスタンドのある近所にあります。[ある]
I want to change this tire. ........................................ Watashi wa kono taiya o kaetai desu. わたしはこのタイヤをかえたいです。[かえる]

20 liters of gasoline, please. .................................. Gasorin o nijū litoru kudasai. ガソリンをにじゅうリトルください。

The tank is full to the top. ..................................... Mantan desu. まんだんです。

Fill up the tank, please. [L. Full to the top, do.] .... Mantan ni shite kudasai. [suru] まんだんにしてください。[する]
unleaded .......................................................... muen gasorin むえんガソリン

diesel fuel ...................................................... dizeru ディーゼル

premium gasoline .............................................. sūpā / haioku スーパー/はいおく

regular gasoline ............................................... regyurā レギュラー

puncture / blowout / flat tire ................................. panku パンク

I have a flat tire. [L. Flat tire did.] ..................... Panku shimashita. [suru] パンクしました。[する]

I want to check the tire pressure. / I want to .... Taiya no kūkiatsu o shirabetai desu. タイヤのくさきあつをしらべたいです。[しらべる]
investigate the tire pressure.

I can't start the motor. ........................................ Watashi wa mōta o sutāto dekimasu. わたしはモーターをスタートできません。[できる]

The starter doesn't work. ..................................... Sutāta ga ugokimasen. [ugoku] スターターがうごきません。[うごく]
to charge / to do a charge (as in charging a ...... jūden shimasu [jūden suru] じゅうでんします。[じゅうでんする]
battery.)

Charge the battery, please. .................................. Baterī o jūden shite kudasai. [jūden suru] バッテリーをじゅうでんしてくださいます。[じゅうでんする]

no good / bad .................................................. dame だめ

The battery is dead. / The battery is entirely bad. ... Baterī wa makkaku dame desu. バッテリーはまったくだめです。
LESSON 66 - .................................................. JUGYŌ 66 - .................................................................

SENTENCES WITH IMPORTANT WORDS AND CONCEPTS

It is necessary to eat. [L. Eat thing necessity is.] Taberu koto wa hitsuyō desu. たべることはひつようです。

That's difficult to believe. [L. Believe thing difficult is.] Shinjiru koto wa muzukashii desu. しんじることはむずかしいです。

It has been three years. Sannen kakatteimasu. [kakaru] さんねんかかっています。[かかる]

It has been a long time. Nagai jikan kakatteimasu. [kakaru] ながいじかんかかっています。[かかる]

This train is always late. Kono densha wa itsumo okuremasu. このでんしゃはいつもおくれます。[おくれる]

It's already five o'clock. Mō go ji desu. もうごじです。

Do you have enough money? / Does enough money exist? Okane ga jibun arimasu ka. [aru] おかれがじゅうぶんにありますか。[ある]

Is it true? Hontō desu ka ほんとうですか。

If.......then............ moshi......nara, もしそれはほんとうなら、これもほんとうです。

If that is true, then this is also true. Moshi sore wa hontō nara, kore mo hontō desu. もしそれはほんとうなら、これもほんとうです。

If that is true, then Mr. Yamada won't go. Moshi sore wa hontō nara, Yamada san wa ikimasen. もしそれはほんとうなら、やまださんはいきません。

It's really good. Sore wa hontō ni i desu. それはほんとうにいいです。

Really! That's terrific. Hontō ni! Sore wa sugoi desu. ほんとうに！それはすごいです。

She is so pretty. Kanojo wa totemo kirei desu. かのじょはとてもきれいです。

He is so nice. Kare wa totemo yasashii desu. 彼人はとてもやさしいです。

There are many photographs. Shashin ga takusan arimasu. しゃしんがたくさんあります。
There are so many books. [L. Books, great] Hon ga sugoku takusan arimasu. [aru] ほんがすごくたくさんあります。
[ある]
This is such a good book. / This is really a wonderful book. Kore wa hontō ni subarashii hon desu. これはほんとうにすばらしい本です。
The weather is so nice today, you know? / Today is really good weather, isn't it? Kyō wa hontō ni ii tenki desu ne. きょうはほんとうにいい天気ですね。
usually たいてい/ふつう
taitei / futsū たいてい/ふつう
I usually leave about eight o'clock. [Watashi wa] taitei hachi ji goro dekakemasu. [dekakeru] [わたしは]たいていはちじごろで
It's snowing. / Snow is falling. Yuki ga furiteimasu. [furu] ゆきがふっています。[ふる]
Which one is the best? Dore ga ichi ban ji desu ka. どれがいちばんいいですか。
We are poor people. Watashitachi wa binbō desu. わたしたちは貧乏です。
It was a very rich country. Sore wa totemo kanemochi no kuni deshita。それはとてもかねもちのくにでした。
This room is better than that room. Kono heya wa sono heya yori mo ii desu。このへやはそのへやよりもいいです。
This room is worse than that room. Kono heya wa sono heya yori mo warui desu。このへやはそのへやよりもわるいです。
This room is worse than the other room. Kono heya wa hoka no heya yori mo warui desu。このへやはほかのへやよりもわるいです。
It was the worst hotel. / That hotel was the worst. Sono hoteru wa saiaku deshita。そのホテルはさいあくでした。
length nagasa ながさ
The line was too long. / The queue was too long. Gyōretsu wa nagasugimashita。ぎょうれつはながすぎました。
My backpack is very light. Watashi no ryuukkasaku wa totemo karui desu。わたしのリュックサックはとてもかるいです。
heavy omoi おもい
is too heavy .............................................. omosugimasu [sugiru] ........................................ おもうぎます[すぎる]
Your luggage is too heavy for the airplane .............................................. Anata no nimotsu wa hikōki niwa omosugimasu. [sugiru] あなたのにもつは飛行機にはおもうぎます。
We wanted some empty glasses. / Some empty glasses were desired. ........... Ikutsuka kara no gurasu ga hoshikatta desu. いくつかからのグラスがほしかったです。
The bus was full of people. ................................................ Basu wa manin deshita. バスはみんなでした。
We wanted that information. / That information was desired. ................... Sono jōhō ga hoshikatta desu. そのじょうほうがほしかったです。
The information was wrong. ................................................ Jōhō ga machigaemashita. [machigaeru] じょうほうがまちがえました。[まちがえる]

Life is beautiful. / To be alive [thing] is ............................................ Ikiru koto wa subarashii desu. ........................................ いきることはすばらしいです。[いる]
I was at home all day. ....................................................... Watashi wa ichinigiiie ni imashita. [iru] わたしたちはじゅうี่いにいました。[いる]
I wanted to stay / to exist ..................................................... itai [iru] ..................................................... たい[いる]
We want to stay at home. / We want to be at home. ................................ Watashitachi wa ie ni itai desu. [iru] わたしたちはいえにいたいです。[いる]
We are going to stay in a four star hotel. ....................................... [Watashitachi wa] yotsu boshi no hoteru ni tomarimasu. [tomaru] [わたしたちは]よつ星のホテルにとまります。[とまる]
I want to practice / to do practice ......................................... renshū shimasu [renshū suru]  rènshū shimasu。[ rènshū suru]
I want to practice French. ......................................................... Watashi wa Furansugo o renshū shitai desu. [renshū suru] わたしたちはフランス語をれんしゅうしたいです。[れんしゅうする]
I want both books. / Both books are desired. ................................. Ryōhō no hon ga hoshii desu.  りょうほうのほんがほしいです。
LESNON 67 - MORE SENTENCES WITH IMPORTANT WORDS AND CONCEPTS

Where is the dog? ... Inu wa doko desu ka. いぬはどこですか。
He is outside. ... Kare wa soto desu. かれはそとです。
I put him outside an hour ago. ... [Watashi wa] ichijikan ma ni kare o soto ni dashimashita. [dasu] [わたしは]いちじかんまえにかれをそとにだしました。[だす]

NAO SARA TAISETSU NA TANGO TO BUN

interior / inside ... naka なか
There is something inside. ... [L.Interior in something exists.] Naka ni nanika ga arimasu. [aru] なかになにかがあります。[ある]

They want to stay here until tomorrow. ... Karera wa ashita made koni itai desu. かれらはあしたまでここにいたいです。[いる]
I'm on vacation. ... Watashi wa kyukachū desu. わたしは休かちゅうです。
I work every day. / I do work every day. ... Mainichi [watashi wa] shigoto o shimasu. [suru] まいにち[わたしは]しごとをします。[する]

this week ... konshū こんしゅう
the end of this week ... konshū no owari こんしゅうのおわり
He has to [do] work until the end of the week. ... Kare wa konshū no owari made ni shigoto o shinakereba naranai desu. [suru] かれはこんしゅうのおわりまでに しごとをしなければならないです。[する]

We want to spend this week at home. ... Watashitachi wa ie de konshū o sugoshitai desu. [sugosu] わしたちはいえでこんしゅうをす ごしたいです。[すごす]

Then, we're going to spend the weekend at my parents home. ... Soshite, ryōshin no ie de shūmatsu o sugoshimasu. [sugosu] そして、りょうしんのいえでしゅ うまつをすごします。[すごす]
The countryside is about 20 kilometers from the town.

What is this called? / What do (you) call this?

Kore wa nan to imasu ka. [iu]

What is your address?

Anata no jūshō wa nan desu ka.

Does this bus go towards the beach?

Kono basu wa bichi no hō ni ikimasu ka. [iku]

No, it goes across town. / No, it goes to the town’s other side.

Iie, machi no mukō ni ikimasu. [iku]

He is late again.

Kare wa mata osoi desu.

That’s impossible.

Sore wa muri desu.

Is that your real name?

Sore wa anata no hontō no namae desu ka.

Is this genuine?

Kore wa hommono desu ka.

Do you know that place?

Sono basho o shitteimasu ka. [shiru]

Excuse me, (I) think that’s my seat.

Sumimasen, sore wa watashi no sekida to omoimasu. [omou]

There’s my seat.

Asoko wa watashi no sekida desu.

Is this seat taken? / Is this seat usable?

Kono sekidō tsukaemasu ka. [tsukaeru]

There was a fire at the hospital.

Byōin de kaiji ga arimashita. [aru]

I am a businessman.

Watashi wa bijinesu man desu.

What business are you in? / What occupation are you doing?

[Anata wa] donna shokuryō o shitteimasu ka. [suru]

I would like to do business with you. [L. I, you,] Watashi wa anata to issho ni bijinesu o
together, business, want to do.] shitai desu. [suru]  
I would like to speak with the owner. [L. I, Watashi wa onna to issho ni hanashi ga shitai desu. [suru]  
what / how dō  
What does this word mean? [L. This word, Kono tango wa dō iu imi desu ka.  
what, say, meaning is?]

LESSON 68 - NEEDING TO DO SOMETHING  
HITSUYO NA KOTO  

NEEDING TO RENT A CAR. / Car rent
I need to rent a car. / Car rent Kuruma o kariru hitsuyō ga arimasu. [kariru]  
necessity exists.  
My brother-in-law needs to go to Tokyo. [Warashi no] giru no kyūdai wa Tōkyō ni iku hitsuyō ga arimasu. [iku]

Her sister-in-law needs to eat more. [L. Her sister-in-law, more big eat necessity exists.] Kanojo no giri no shaimai wa motto ōku taberu hitsuyō ga arimasu. [taberu]

His brother-in-law needs to buy something. Kare no giri no kyōdai wa nanika o kau hitsuyō ga arimasu. [kau]

I need to sell some things next month. [Warashi wa] raigetsu ikuraka no mono o uru hitsuyō ga arimasu. [uru]

We need to leave in a few minutes. Watashitachi wa sū fun de shuppatsu suru
hitsuyō ga arimasu. [shuppatsu suru]
within (referring to a time frame) ........................................... no uchi ni ......................................................... のうちに
Mr. Suzuki needs to arrive within an hour. ............... Suzuki san wa ichi ji kan no uchi ni tsuku ....... すずきさんはいちじかんのうちに
hitsuyō ga arimasu. [tsuku] ........................................... つくひつようがあります。[つく]
I need to finish by ten p.m. ........................................ [Watashi wa] jū ji made ni owaru hitsuyō .......... [わたしは]じゅうじまでにおわるひ
ga arimasu. [owaru] .................................................... つようがあります。[おわる]
Mrs. Yamasaki needs to do the housework. ................ Yamasaki san wa kaji suru hitsuyō ....... ยำมะซากิさんはかじをするひつよ
 ga arimasu. [suru] ..................................................... うがあります。[する]
I need to fix the trailer. .......................................... [Watashi wa] torērā o naosu hitsuyō ga ........... [わたしは]トレーラーをおすひつようがあります。[おす]
arimasu. [naosu] ....................................................... うがあります。[おす]
My older sister needs to return this package. ............... [Watashi no] ane wa kono kozutumi o .......... [わたしの]あねはこのこづつみを
kaesu hitsuyō ga arimasu [kaesu]. ................................... かえすひつようがあります。[かえす]
My grandfather needs to get [obtain] a credit card. ....... [Watashi no] sofū wa kurejitto kādo .......... [わたしの]そふはクレジットカード
eru hitsuyō ga arimasu. [eru] ........................................... をえるひつようがあります。[える]
My aunt needs to bring more money. ......................... [Watashi no] oba wa motto okane o motte ....... [わたしの]おばはもっとお金をお
kuru hitsuyō ga arimasu. [motte kuru] いてくるひつようがあります。
[もっていく]
The policeman needs to take more photographs. .......... Keisatsu kan wa motto shashin o toru .......... けいさつかんはもっとしゃしんを
hitsuyō ga arimasu. [toru] ........................................... とるひつようがあります。[とる]
I need to buy a car. / Someone needs to buy a car. ....... Kuruma o kau hitsuyō ga arimasu. [kau] ........... くるまを買うひつようがありま
[kau] す。[かう]
I don't need to buy anything. ................................. [Watashi wa] nani mo kau hitsuyō ga ........... [わたしは]なにも買うひつようが
arimasen. [kau] ......................................................... ありません。[かう]
He needed to buy a new desk. ................................. Kare wa atarashi tsukue o kau hitsuyō ........... かれはあたらしいつくえを買うひ
ga arimashita. [kau] .................................................. つようがありました。[かう]
He didn't need to buy a new computer. かれはあたらしいコンピューターやつ hari ga arimasen deshita. つ
Don't you need to buy a wallet? あなたはさいふをあつよがなのか ka wa saifu o kau hitsuyō ga arimasen ka. う つ
I need to talk to the manager. はたしはマネージャーとはなすをひつようがあります。はたしは watashi wa manējā to hanasu hitsuyō ga arimasu. な
I needed to talk about my problem. わたしはわたしのもんだいのことをはなすひつようがありました。はたしは watashi wa watashi no mondai no koto o hanasu hitsuyō ga arimashtaa. た
I don't need to talk to the teacher. わたしはせんせいとはなすひつようがありません。はたしは watashi wa sensei to hanasu hitsuyō ga arimasen. う
I didn't need to talk to anyone. わたしはだれともはなすひつようがありませんでした。はたしは watashi wa dare to mo hanasu hitsuyō ga arimasen deshita. だ
You need to write a letter to your parents soon. あなたはすくにょうしんにてがみをかくひつようがあります。かく つ
I don't need to write a letter. わたしはがみをかくひつようがありません。かく watashi wa tegami o kaku hitsuyō ga arimasen. う
I didn't need to lend my niece any money. わたしはわたしのめいにおかげをかすひつようがありませんでした。かす watashi wa watashi no mei ni okane o kasu hitsuyō ga arimasen deshita. た
He didn't need to buy that television. わたしはそのテレビをかうひつようがありませんでした。かう つ
I will need to think about that [thing]. わたしはそのことをかんがえるひつようがあります。かんがえる watashi wa sono koto o kangaeru hitsuyō ga arimasu. う
LESSON 69 - SOMEONE SHOULD DO SOMETHING

Someone should eat. / Eating way is good. [L. Tabeta hō ga ii desu. {taberu}]
Eating way good is.
I should eat breakfast. / As for me, breakfast Watashi wa asa gohan o tabeta hō ga ii
desu. {taberu}
I should sell the car. / Selling the car [way] is Jidōsha o utta hō ga ii desu. {uru}
good.
I should buy the car. / Buying the car [way] is Jidōsha o katta hō ga ii desu. {kau}
good.
I should buy some new skis. / As for me, buying Watashi wa atarashii suki o katta hō ga
new skis is good.
i desu. {kau}
I should buy a clock. [Watashi wa] okidokei o katta hō ga ii
i desu. {kau}
I should sell my business to my son. [Watashi wa] musuko ni watashi no
bijinesu o utta hō ga ii desu. {uru}
You should see his new sailboat. [Anata wa] kare no atarashii seiru bōto
o mita hō ga ii desu. {miru}
He should understand you. Kare wa anata o wakatta hō ga ii desu.
wakaru
Someone should turn on the light. Dareka ga raito o tsuketa hō ga ii desu.
tsukeru
They should turn off the radio. Karera wa rajo o keshita hō ga ii desu.
kesu
This spring, I should pay back the money. [Watashi wa] kono haru ni okane o shiharatta hō ga ii desu. [shiharau]

This summer, I should visit my family. [Watashi wa] kono natsu ni [watashi no] kazoku o hōmon shita hō ga ii desu. [hōmon suru]

In the fall, I should return to California. [Watashi wa] aki ni Karihoruniya ni kaetta hō ga ii desu. [kaeru]

during no aida ni のあいだに

During the winter, I should learn German. [Watashi wa] fuyu no aida ni Doitsugo o naratta hō ga ii desu. [narau]

more often motto shibashiba もっとしばしば

I should go to church more often. [Watashi wa] motto shibashiba kyōkai ni itta hō ga ii desu. [iku]

They should try again. Karera wa möichido doryoku shita hō ga ii desu. [doryoku suru]

My sister-in-law should look for a better job. [Watashi no] giri no shimai wa motto ii shigoto o sagashita hō ga ii desu. [sagasu]

She should shut the door. Kanojo wa to o shimeta hō ga ii desu. [shimeru]

We should follow the signs. We should do like Watashitachi wa kamban no tōri ni suru hō ga ii desu. [suru]

[Watashi no] this is no okay to shihara hō ga ii desu. [shiharau]

[Watashi no] this is no okay to hōmono shita hō ga ii desu. [hōmon suru]

[Watashi no] this is no okay to karihoriunia ni kaetta hō ga ii desu. [kaeru]

[Watashi no] this is no okay to Doitsu go o naratta hō ga ii desu. [narau]

[Watashi no] this is no okay to motto shibashiba kyōkai ni itta hō ga ii desu. [iku]

[Watashi no] this is no okay to karera wa möichido doryoku shita hō ga ii desu. [doryoku suru]

[Watashi no] this is no okay to giri no shimai wa motto ii shigoto o sagashita hō ga ii desu. [sagasu]

[Watashi no] this is no okay to kanojo wa to o shimeta hō ga ii desu. [shimeru]

[Watashi no] this is no okay to watashitachi wa kamban no tōri ni suru hō ga ii desu. [suru]
You should meet my boss. .......................................................... [Anata wa] watashi no bosu ni atta hō ga ............ [あなたは]わたしのボスにあったほうがいいです。[あう]

You should show it to his niece. ........................................... [Anata wa] kare no mei ni sore o miseta hō ga ii desu. [miseru] [minareru] [miseteru] [ministeru]

You should swim more. ...................................................... [Anata wa] motto oyoida hō ga ii desu. [oyogu]

I should eat the salad. .......................................................... [Watashi wa] sarada o tabeta hō ga ii desu. [taberu] [taberu]

I should not eat the fruit. [L. I fruit eating shouldn't.] [Watashi wa] furūtsu o tabete wa ikemasen. / [Watashi wa] furūtsu o tabete wa ikenai. [taberu]

I should buy a dictionary. .................................................... [Watashi wa] jisho o katta hō ga ii desu. [kau] [kau]

I should not buy that new lamp. [L. I that new lamp buying shouldn't.] [Watashi wa] sono atarashii rampu o katte wa ikenai. [kau]

I should sell my stock. .......................................................... [Watashi wa watashi no] kabu o utta hō ga ii desu. [urau] [urau]

I should not sell everything. ................................................ [Watashi wa] subete o utte wa ikemasen. [urau] [urau]

like this ................................................................................. kono yō ni .......................................................... このように

You shouldn't see me like this. .............................................. [Anata wa] kono yō ni watashi o mite wa ikemasen. [miru] [miru]

We shouldn't follow the river. .............................................. Watashitachi wa kawa no tōri ni itte wa ikemasen. [iku] [iku]
You shouldn’t do that. ................................................ [Anata wa] sore o shite wa ikemasen. ........................ [あなたは]それをしてはいけません。
[suru]

You shouldn’t think about it. / You shouldn’t ................................ [Anata wa] sono koto o kangaete wa __________________________________________ [あなたは]そのことをかんがえてはいけません。[かんがえる]
[ikemasen. [kangaeru]]

You shouldn’t go out every night. ................................................ [Anata wa] maiban dekakete wa ikemasen. ........................ [あなたは]まいばんでかけてはいけません。[でかける]
[dekakeru]

One shouldn’t steal. ................................................................. [Hiito wa] nusunde wa ikemasen. [nusumu] ......... [ひとは]ぬすんではいけません。[ぬすむ]

Shouldn’t you eat the soup? .................................................... [Anata wa] sūpu o tabeta hō ga ii ja nai desu ka. ......... [あなたは]スープを食べたほうがいいですか。

Shouldn’t you buy a new car? ................................................... [Anata wa] atarashii jidōsha o katta hō ga ii ja nai desu ka. [kau] ........................................... [あなたは]あたらしいじどうしゃをかったほうがいいじゃないですか。[かう]

Shouldn’t you buy more of them? .......................................... [Anata wa] sorera o motto katta hō ga ii ja nai desu ka. [kau] ........................................... [あなたは]それらをもっとかったほうがいいじゃないですか。[かう]

Shouldn’t you wash the windows first? ................................ [Anata wa] saisho ni mado o aratta hō ga ii ja nai desu ka. [ara] ........................................... [あなたは]さいしょうにまどをあらったほうがいいじゃないですか。[あら]

In English, the auxiliary verb "should" is often used along with a main verb to express a sort of obligation, as in "I should do it." Japanese doesn’t really have an equivalent structure. Instead, the Japanese say something like "Watashi wa sore o shita hō ga ii desu," which means something like "As for me, doing it is good." In the above sentence, the verb "shita" (suru) is the past indicative form of the verb. To form the negative, as in "I should not do it.,” the verb "shita" changes to "shite”which is the gerund form of the verb. "Ikemasen" or “ikenai” which means "should not" or "must not" is then used. The sentence "Watashi wa sore oshite wa ikemasen”, then means something like "As for me, that doing should not." To form the negative question as in "Shouldn’t I do it?”, the verb "desu" changes to "ja nai desu ka".
LES 70 - SOMEONE MIGHT DO SOMETHING

JUGYÔ 70 - DAREKA GA NANIKA O SURU KAMOSHIRENAI

じゅぎょう70- だれかがなにかをするかもしない

can't tell if / might / may ................................................................. kamoshirenai かもしれない
I might buy a vacation home.[L. I vacation's house buy can't tell if.] ................................. Watashi wa bakeishon no uchi o kau kamoshirenai. [kau] わたしはバケーションのうちを かもしれない。[かう]
I might not buy that book. ................................................................. Watashi wa sono hon o kawanai kamoshirenai. [kau] わたしはその本をかわないかもしれない。[かう]
I might not buy anything. ................................................................. Watashi wa nani mo kawanai kamoshirenai. [kau] わたしはなにもかわないかもしれない。[かう]
They might leave before you. ............................................................. Karera wa anata no mae ni shuppatsu suru kamoshirenai. [shuppatsu suru] かれらはあなたのまえにしゅっぱつするかもしれない。[しゅっぱつする]
They might not leave by tomorrow. ...................................................... Karera wa ashita made shuppatsu shinai kamoshirenai. [shuppatsu suru] かれらはあしたまでしゅっぱつしないかもしれない。[しゅっぱつをする]
He might arrive after you. ................................................................. Kare wa anata no ato de tsuku kamoshirenai. [tsuku] かれはあなたのあとでつくるかもしれない。[つく]
He may not arrive in time. / He might not be on time. ......................... Kare wa maniawa nai kamoshirenai. [maniawau] かれはまにあわないかもしれない。[まにあう]
It may die soon. ................................................................. Sore wa mo sugu shinu kamoshirenai. [shinu] それはもうすぐ死ぬかもしれない。[しゅ]
to go sightseeing / to go visit .......................................................... kembutsu ni iku けんぶつにいく
I might [go] visit our property next week. .......................... [Watashi wa] raishū watachitachi no tochi o kenbutsu ni iku kamoshirenai. [わたしは]らいしゅうわたしたちのとちをけんぶつにいくかもしれない。[いく]

I may sell everything during the autumn. ......................... [Watashi wa] aki no aida ni subete o uru kamoshirenai. [ur] [わたしは]あきのあいだにすべてをうるかもしれない。[うる]

It might rain soon. / Rain may fall soon. ...................... Mo sugu ame ga furu kamoshirenai. [furu] [ふる] もうすぐにあめがふるかもしれない。[ふる]

They might have good luck. ................................. Karera wa koun o motsu kamoshirenai. [motsu] [もつ] かれらはこうんをもつかかもしれないになる

to turn into / to change into / to become / to come to pass ........................ ni naru ........................................................................................................ になる

My nephew might become a doctor. ................................. [Watashi no] oi wa isha ni naru kamoshirenai. [ni nar] [わたしの]おいはいしゃになるかもしれない。[になる]

My aunt might return next week. ............................... [Watashi no] obasan wa raishū kaeru kamoshirenai. [kaeru] [わたしの]おばさんはらいしゅうかえるかもしれない。[かえる]

My niece might fly to Africa. .......................... [Watashi no] mei wa Afurika ni hikō suru kamoshirenai. [hikō suru] [わたしの]めいはアフリカにひこうするかもしれない。[ひこうする]

I may borrow some money from my grandmother. ....... [Watashi wa] obasan kara okane o kariru kamoshirenai. [karir] [わたしは]おばあさんからおかねをかりるかもしれない。[かるり]

My brother-in-law might travel to Europe. ............ [Watashi no] giru no kyōdai wa Yōroppa made ryōkō suru kamoshirenai. [ryōkō suru] [わたしの]ぎりのきょうだいはヨーロッパまでりょうこうをするかもしれない。[りょうこうする]

I may call my brother-in-law next month. .......... [Watashi wa] raigetsu giru no kyōdai ni denwa suru kamoshirenai. [denwa suru] [わたしは]らいげつぞうのきょうだいにでんわするかもしれない。[でんわする]
I might not go home early. / I may **not return** early.  
Watashi wa hayaku *kaeranai* kamoshirenai.  
[kaeru] わたしははやくかえらないかもしれない。[かえる]

I may **not show** it to him.  
Watashi wa [kare ni] *misenai* kamoshirenai.  
[miseru] [わたしたちはれにみせないかもしれない。[みせる]

I might wait a little longer. / I may wait a **little more**.  
Watashi wa [mō sukoshi] *matsu* kamoshirenai.  
[matsu] [わたしたしてもうすこしまつかもしれない。[まつ]

They might **not fix** my car.  
Karera wa [watashi no] *naosenai* kamoshirenai.  
[naosu] [かれらはわたしの]くるまをなおすせないかもしれない。[なおす]

Jana, you might like it. [L. Jana, that **like might**]  
Jana san, [anata wa] *sore ga suki* kamoshirenai.  
[janasan] [あなたは]それがすきかもしれない。[janasan]

To express the possibility of doing something, as in "I may do it" or "I might do it.," Japanese uses the dictionary form of the verb followed by the verb "*kamoshirenai*" which means "can't tell if", or "might." The above two sentences translate to "Watashi wa sore o suru kamoshirenai," which means something like "As for me, to do it can't be told." The negative "I may not do it." (Watashi wa sore o shimasen kamoshirenai.) is formed by using the negative form of the verb (shimasen), and adding kamoshirenai.
LESSON 71 - ................................. JUGYŌ 71 - ................................. じゅぎょう71–

DAYS OF THE WEEK .......................... KYOO WA NAN YOObi DESUKA. .................. きょうはなんようびですか。

Today is Sunday. .................................. Kyō wa Nichiyōbi desu. ......................... きょうはにちようびです。

Yesterday was Saturday. ...................... Kinō wa Doyōbi deshita. ....................... きのうはどようびでした。

Tomorrow will be Monday. ................... Ashita wa Getsuyōbi desu. ..................... あしたはげつようびです。

The day after tomorrow will be Tuesday. .... Asatte wa Kayōbi desu. ......................... あさってはかようびです。

The day before yesterday was Friday. ....... Ototoi wa Kinyōbi deshita. ...................... おとといはきんようびでした。

I went to the movies last Wednesday. [L. Last week’s Wednesday, movies to went.] Senshū no Suiyōbi [watashi wa] eiga e ikimashita. [iku] せんしゅうのすいようび[わたしたちは]えがえへいきました。[いく]

There was a big party Thursday night. [L. Thursday's evening, big party existed.] Mokuyōbi no yoru ōki na pātī ga arimashita. [aru] もくようびのるよおおきなパーティーがありました。[ある]

My grandfather will be here Tuesday. ........ Kayōbi watashi no sofū wa koko ni imasu.[iru] がようびわたしたしのそふはここにいます。[いる]

My grandmother left Monday. .................. [Watashi no] sobo wa Getsuyōbi ni shuppatsu shimashita. [shuppatsu suru] [わたしたしの]そばはげつようびにしゅっぱつしました。[しゅっぱつする]

If today is Wednesday, then tomorrow will be Moshi kyō wa Suiyōbi nara ashita wa Mokuyōbi desu. もしこきょうはすいようびならあしたはもくようびです。

I go to church on Sundays. ................... [Watashi wa] Nichiyōbi kyōkai ni ikimasu. [iku] [わたしたちは]にちようびにきょうかいにいきます。[いく]

My niece bought her tickets last [week's] Friday. .... [Watashi no] mei wa senshū no Kinyōbi ni kippu o kaimashita. [kau] [わたしたしの]めいはせんしゅうのきんようびにくっぴをおかいました。[かう]
LESSON 72 - MONTHS OF THE YEAR

In January, I traveled to France. ическойガツにフランスまでりょうこうをしました。りょうこうする]

In February the weather was very cold. にがつのてんきはとてもさむかったです。

March was very windy this year. / This year's March, wind was very strong.

I drove from France to Germany in April. わたしはしじがつにフランスからドイツまでうんてんしました。うんてんする]

I took the boat to Sweden in May. / In May, I went by boat to Sweden.

In June, I traveled by train to Norway. ロクガツに電車でノルウェーにりょうこうしました。りょうこうする]

In July the weather was really great. / July's weather was very good.

But in August it rained a lot. / But (in) August, the cloud...
September was very cloudy. Ku gatsu wa totemo kumorimashita. [kumoru]
to clear up / to become nice haremashu [hareru] はれます [はれる]
But then October was quite sunny. / But then Dakedo jū gatsu wa yoku haremashita. だけどじゅうがつはよくはれました。 [はれる]
October was very nice. [hareru]
to become / to make grow / to result in narimasu [naru] なります [なる]
November is going to be rainy again. [L. Jū ichi gatsu wa mata ame ni narimasu. じゅういちがつはまたあめになります。 [なる]
November again rain will result.] なります。 [なる]
It's going to snow a lot in December. / In December, much snow will fall. Jū ni gatsu wa takusan yuki ga furimasu. じゅうにかつはたくさんゆきがふります。 [ふる]

LESSON 73 - AT THE DOCTOR'S OFFICE

I need a doctor. / Physician is necessary. Isha ga hitsuyō desu. いしゃがひつようです。
early / soon / fast / quickly hayaku はやく
to be able to / can dekiru できる
as soon as possible / as quickly as one can dekiru dake hayaku できるだけはやく
Do you know a good dentist? Ii haisha san o shiteimasu ka. [shiru] いいはいしゃさんをしていますか。 [しる]
What's your problem? / What's the problem? Mondai wa nan desu ka. もんだいはなんですか。
I'm very sick. Watashi wa totemo byōki desu. わたしはとてもびょうきです。
I feel nauseous. [L. 1, nausea do.] [Watashi wa] hakike ga shimasu. [suru] わたしがはきけがします。 [す
I don't feel well. / Feeling is not good. Kibun ga yoku arimasen. [aru] きぶんがよくありません。 [ある]
I have pain here. / (It) hurts here. ........................................ Koko ga itaimasu. [itamu] ...................................................ここがいたみます。[いたむ]
He has an injury. / He did an injury. .................................. Kare wa kega o shimashita. [sru] ............................................かれはけがをしました。[する]
Someone is injured. / Someone did an injury. ......................... Dareka ga kega o shimashita. [sru] ......................................だれかけがをしました。[する]
the foot / the leg ................................................................. ashi .................................................................あし
the ankle ............................................................................. ashi kubi .....................................................あしくび
the back ............................................................................. senaka .........................................................せなか
the arm .............................................................................. ude ......................................................... うで
the hand .............................................................................. te ......................................................... て
the head ............................................................................. atama .................................................... あたま
the tooth ............................................................................. ha ......................................................... は
an ear ................................................................................ mimi ..................................................... みみ
an eye / the eyes ................................................................... me ..................................................... め
the mouth ......................................................................... kuchi .................................................. くち
the blood ............................................................................ chi ..................................................... ち
violent / severe / heavy ....................................................... hidoi ................................................. ひどい
I have a very bad headache. ................................................... Watashi wa zutsu ga hidoi desu. ...............................................わたしがずつうがひどいです。
I have a toothache. / Tooth is painful. ................................. Ha ga itai desu. ..............................................................はがいたいです。
I have a stomach ache. [L. I, stomach painful is.] ................. Watashi wa onaka ga itai desu. ...............................................わたしがおなかかいたいです。
Is it broken? ....................................................................... Sore wa kosetsu shiteimasu ka. ..............................................それはこっせつしていませんか。
earache / ear pain ............................................................... mimi ita ................................................ mimi ita
Do you have something for an earache? / Do ....................... Mimi ita no kusuri ga arimasu ka. [aru] .......................... みみいたのくすりがありますか。[ある]
LESSON 74 - AT THE DINNER TABLE JUGYÔ 74 - TABEMASHÔ じゅぎょう74-たべましょう

We have a reservation for seven o’clock. Watasitachi wa shichi ji ni yoyaku ga arimasu. [aru]
a piece / a bottle / one ippon
May I have a bottle of wine please? / Wine Wain o ippon onegai shimasu いっぱい
May I have another bottle? Mô ippon onegai shimasu もういっぱいおねがいします。
One more [thing], please. Mô hitotsu kudasai もうひとつください。
A different one please. Betsu no kudasai べつのください。
milk miruku / gyûnyû ミルク/きゅうにゅう
I would like another glass of milk. Another [one] Miruku ga mô ippai hoshii desu ミルクがもういっぱいほしいです。
more] glass of milk is desired. Would you like another [different] plate? / Is a Betsu no osara ga hoshii desu ka べつのおさらがほしいですか。
different plate desired?
Would you like another plate? / Is one more Osara ga mô hitotsu hoshii desu ka おさらがもうひとつほしいですか。
plate desired?
I receive. / I will receive. / I will eat or drink. [Watashi wa] itadakimasu, [itadaku] [わたしは]いただきます。[いただく]
humble form)
May we have...? / May I receive...? itadakemasu ka? [itadaku] いただけますか？[いただく]
pass [L. Pass!] totte [toru] とって[とる]
Pass the vegetables, please. [L. Vegetables pass] Yasai o totte itadakemasu ka. [itadaku] やさいをとっていただけますか。
receive?
May we have a little more cheese? [Watashitachi wa] mô sukoshi chizu o itadakemasu ka. [itadaku] [わたしたちは]もうすこしチーズをいただけますか。[いただく]
I would like some more jam, please. [L. More] little jam receive?

Excuse me, may I have another napkin? Sumimasen, napkin mō hitotsu itadakemasu ka. [itadaku]

Bring [L. Bring!] mottekite [motteku] itadakemasu ka. [itadaku]

Bring me some mineral water please. [L. Me to,] Watashi ni mineraru uōtā o mottekite kudasai. [motteku] itadakemasu ka. [itadaku]

Carbonated or non carbonated? [L. Carbonated] Tansan desu ka tansan ja nai desu ka. [itadaku]

What are today's specials? Kyō no supeshiaru wa nan desu ka. [itadaku]

proud cooking / proud cookery jiman yōri jiman ryōri

What is the specialty of the house? Koko no jiman ryōri wa nan desu ka. [itadaku]

What time do you open for lunch? [L. Lunch,] Ranchi wa nan ji ni akimasu ka. [aku] Rantei wa nanjī ni akimasu ka. [aku]

(At) what time does the restaurant close? Resutoran wa nan ji ni shimarimasu ka. [shimarу]

What's for dessert? / What is dessert? Dezāto wa nan desu ka. [itadaku]

Three more beers please. Biiru o mō sambon kudasai. [itadaku]

How about you? [Anata wa] ikaga desu ka. [itadaku]

Would you like some cream in your coffee? [Anata wa anata no] kōhi ni kurimu wa ikaga desu ka.

I would like a steak, please. [Watashi wa] sutēki o onegai shimasu.
amount of cooking / degree of cooking ........................................ yakikagen ................................................................. やきかげん
How is it done? ............................................................... Dō itashimasu ka? [itasu] .................................................. どういたしますか。[いたします]
How would you like your meat cooked? [L. Niku no yakikagen wa dō itashimasu ka. [itasu] にくのやきかげんはどういたしますか。[いたします]
Meat's cooking degree, how is it done?] ................................
What are the choices? ......................................................... Sentaku wa nan desu ka. ...................................................... せんたくはなんですか。
rare .................................................................................. rea / nama .......................... レア/なま
medium ............................................................................. midiamu ........................................... ミディアム
well done [L. well cooked thing] ......................................... yoku vaita mono .......................................................... よくやいたもの
Do you have any fresh fruit? ................................................ Shinsen na furūtsu wa arimasu ka. [aru] しんせんなフルーツはありますか。[ある]
The meal was very bad. ....................................................... Shokuji wa totemo mazukatta desu. しょうじはとてもまずかったです。
good tasting / tasty ............................................................ oishii ......................................................... おいしい
The meal was delicious. / The meal was .......................... Shokuji wa hijō ni oishikatta desu. しょうじはひじょうにおいしかったです。
extremely tasty. ................................................................
This knife is inexpensive. .................................................. Kono naiifu wa takakunai desu. ............................................ このナイフはたかくないです。
Give me a spoon, please. .................................................. Supūn o kudasai. ......................................................... スプーンをください。
I need some chopsticks. .................................................... Watashi wa hashi ga hitsuyō desu. .................................. わたしははしがひつようです。
I need a bigger bowl. [L. Bigger bowl is necessary.] ..... [Watashi wa] motto ōki na bōru ga hitsuyō desu. [わたしば]もっとおおきなボールがひつようです。
Who is going to wash the dishes? ...................................... Dare ga sara o araimasu ka. [arau] だれがさらをおあたりますか。[あらう]
Is there an ashtray here? .................................................. Koko ni haizara ga arimasu ka. ここにはいざらがありますか。
What (kinds of) fruit do you have? .................................... Furūtsu wa nani ga arimasu ka. フルーツはなにがありますか。

53
We need two more chairs. [L. We more two chairs needed are.]
Watas hitachi wa ato futatsu isu ga hitsuyō desu.

Where do you put the silverware?..........................Ginsehin wa doko ni okimasu ka. [oku]
ぎんせいひんはどこにおきますか。[おく]

Where do you keep the silverware?..........................Ginsehin wa doko ni shimatte okimasu ka. [shimatte oku]
ぎんせいひんはどこにしまっておきますか。[しまっておく]

We would like to order now. / I want to do an order now.
Ima chūmon o shitai desu. [soru]..........................いまちゅうもんをしたいです。[する]

The phrase "Itadakimasu," is used frequently by the Japanese when they are eating. It means something like "I will receive." It is a humble verb. People say "Itadakimasu," before they start eating or to ask for food items during a meal as shown in the above examples. It is also used when buying items. For example, "Ringo o hitotsu itadakimasu," means "I would like to buy one apple."

"Itadakimasu" becomes "itadakemasu" when it is asking permission to do something such as "Can I ?" or "May I ?"

"Mo hitotsu" means "one more thing" for about 80% of the items in the Japanese language. Several different counting systems are used in Japanese depending on objects being counted.
LESSON 75 - JUGYŌ 75 -
REFLEXIVE AND RECIPROCAL CONSTRUCTIONS

I wash myself. ................................................................. Watashi wa jibun o araimasu. [arau] わたしはじぶんをあらいます。[あらう]
The old man washes himself. ............................ Rojin wa kare jishin o araimasu. [arau] ろうじんはかれじしんをあらいます。[あらう]
You wash yourself. ................................................... [Anata wa] anata jishin o araimasu. [arau] あなたはあなたじしんをあらいます。[あらう]
We will wash ourselves. ....................................... [Watashitachi wa] watashitachi jishin o araimasu. [arau] わたしたちはわたしたちじしんをあらいます。[あらう]
Paul saw himself in the mirror. ......................... Poru san wa kagami ni kare jishin o mimashita. [miru] ポールさんはかがみにかれじしんをみました。[みる]
Did you make it yourself? ................................. [Anata wa] anata jishin sore o tsukurimashita ka. [tsukuru] あなたはあなたじしんそれをつくりましたか。[つくる]
Paul, did he make it himself? ........................ Poru san, kare jishin o tsukurimashita ka. [tsukuru] ポールさん、かれじしんをつくりましたか。[つくる]
Did you see yourselves on TV? ........................ [Anataga wa] terebi ni anataga jishin o mimashita ka. [miru] あなたがたはテレビにあなたがたじしんをみましたか。[みる]
They washed themselves with soap. ............... [Karera wa] sekken de karera jishin o araimashita. [arau] かれらはせっけんでかれらじしんをありました。[あらう]
We saw ourselves in the movie. ................. [Watashitachi wa] eiga de watashitachi jishin o mimashita. [miru] わたしたちはえいがでわたしたちじしんをみました。[みる]
We did not see ourselves in the picture. ....... [Watashitachi wa] shashin de watashitachi jishin o mimasen deshita. [miru] わたしたちはしゃしんでわたしたちじしんをみませんでした。[みる]
I don't wash myself. ........................................... [Watashi wa] jibun o araimasen. [arau] わたしはじぶんをあらいません。[あらう]
She burned herself. .......................................................... [Kanojo wa] kanojo jishin o yakimashita. [ka no jyo ha] ka no jyo jishin o yakimashita. [yaku]

They aren’t hurting themselves (all females) ................................ [Kanojotachi wa] kanojotachi jishin o kizutsuketeimasen. [kizu tsukeru]

We wash each other. ......................................................... Watashitachi wa tagai ni araimasu. [arau]

Did you see each other last week? ...................................... Anatagata wa senshū tagai ni mimashita ka. [miru]

They’re looking at each other. ........................................... Karera wa tagai ni miteimasu. [miru]

They don’t see each other. ................................................ Karera wa tagai ni mimasen. [miru]

Do you look at each other? .................................................. Anatagata wa tagai ni mimasu ka. [miru]

We remember each other. .................................................. Watashitachi wa tagai ni oboemasu [ooboru]

Those people didn’t hurt each other. .................................. Ano hitotachi wa tagai ni kizutsukemasen deshita. [itameru]

In a reflexive sentence, the object of the verb refers back to the subject or topic. In other words, the object of the verb and the subject or topic are the same person or thing. When a reflexive pronoun such as "jibun", "anata jishin" etc. is used, the topic or subject is usually obvious. When the subject or topic is obvious, it is usually left out. In the above examples, topics which would normally be left out of a sentence are shown in brackets in order to provide complete translations of the English sentences.

Reciprocal construction is formed with the pronoun "tagai ni" which means "each other". Reciprocal construction always has a plural subject.
LESSON 76 - SOME USEFUL SENTENCES

I will wake up tomorrow at 7 A.M. ............................................................ [Watashi wa] ashita gozen shichi ji ni okimasu. [okiru]
(At) what time did you wake up? .......................................................... [Anata wa] nan ji ni okimashita ka. [okiru]

Frank, aren't you going to get up soon? ........................................... Furanku san, [anata wa] sugu okimasen ka. [okiru]
(Singular)

I am getting up. / I'm waking up. ....................................................... [Watashi wa] okiteimasu. [okiru]

She is going to go to bed now. / She is going to go to sleep now.
Kanojo wa ima nemasu. [neru]

They will fall asleep quickly. ................................................................. Karera wa hayaku ne irimasu. [ne iru]

She is falling asleep. ........................................................................... Kanojo wa ne itteimasu. [ne iru]

We will fall asleep within a few minutes. ........................................... [Watashitachi wa] sū fun no uchi ni ne irimasu. [ne iru]

I remember this place. ........................................................................ [Watashi wa] kono tokoro o oboemasu [oboeru]

It will happen in a few minutes. .......................................................... Sū fun ni okorimasu. [okoru]

I'm going to take a walk now. ............................................................... [Watashi wa] ima sampo shimasu. [sampo suru]

feeling / sense / perception ................................................................. kanji

I feel tired today. [L. I today tired feeling is.] .................................... [Watashi wa] kyō tsukareta kanji desu.
LESSON 77 - CLOTHES .......................................... JUGYŌ 77 - YÔFUKU ........................................... じゅぎょう77- よーふく
I have to buy some new underwear. ........................................ [Watashi wa] atarashii shitagi o kawanakereba naranai desu. [kau] わたしは新しか♀しなさいしたぎをおわなければならないです。[うう]
worn out ............................................................... tsukaifurushi つかいふるし
Are your old clothes worn out? ..................................... Anata no furui yôfuku wa tsukaifurushi desu ka. あなたの古いようふくはつかいふるしですか。
No, but I need some new shoes. / No, but new shoes are necessary. ............................................................. [Anata wa] kutsu ga hitsuyô desu. いいえ、だけど、あたらしいくつがひつようです。
Are you going to buy socks too? .................................... [Anata wa] kutsushita mo kaimasu ka. あなたはくつしたかもいますか。[うう]
I have to wash my pants. ............................................ [Watashi wa] watashi no zabon o arawanakereba naranai desu. [arau] わたしは私がズボンをおわなければならないです。[あらう]
That's a very pretty dress. / That is a really pretty dress. Sore wa hontô ni kirei na doresu desu. それはほんとうにきれいなドレスです。
Where is my suit? .................................................. Watashi no sütsu wa doko desu ka. わたしのスーツはどこですか。
ready ................................................................. yôi ga dekita よいができたち
Isn't my suit ready yet? [L. My suit yet ready isn't?] Watashi no sütsu wa mada yôi ga dekiteimasen ka. わたしのスーツはまだよいいができていませんか。[よういができる]
When will it be ready? ............................................. Itsu yôi ga dekimasu ka. よしいができますか。[よういができる]
What are you going to wear? .................................... [Anata wa] nani o kiteimasu ka. あなたはなにをきていますか。[きている]
That’s a very nice sweater. / That’s a really good sweater. Sore wa hontô ni ii sēta desu. それはほんとうにいいセーターです。
Where can I buy a good swimsuit? ........................................ [Watashi wa] doko de ii mizugi ga kaemasu ........................ [わたしは]どこでいいみずぎがけますか。

Where can I find a blouse like this? .................................... [Watashi wa] doko de kono kanji no burausu ga mitsukeramesu ka. [わたしは]どこでこのかんじのブラウスがみつけられますか。

She is going to need a raincoat this afternoon. / ................. Kyō no gogo reinkō to ga hitsuyō desu. ................................. きょうのごごレインコートがひつようですよ。

This afternoon, a raincoat is necessary. ................................

Paul, have you seen my hat? / Paul, did you see my hat? .......... Poru san, [anata wa] watashi no bōshi o mimashita ka. [miru] [みる]
My ties need to be cleaned. / My neckties have to be cleaned. .................................................. Watashi no nekutai wa arawanakereba naranai desu. [arau] [あらう]
My blouse is torn. / My blouse got torn. ............................ Watashi no burausu wa yaburemashita. [yabureru] [やぶれる]

What is your size? .............................................................. [Anata no] saizu wa nan desu ka. [あなたの]サイズはなんですか。
I take size 40. / My size is 40. .......................................... Watashi no saizu wa yonjū desu. .............................. わたしのサイズはよんじゅーです。

I need new gloves. / New gloves are necessary. .............. Atarashii tebukuro ga hitsuyō desu. ............................ あたらしいてぶるがひつようです。

to lose / to be lost / to be missing ................................. funshitsu suru ................................. ふんしつする
I'm missing a glove. / A glove is missing. ....................... Tebukuro o funshitsu shiteimasu. [funshitsu suru] てぶくろをふんしつしています。[ふんしつする]

I bought new glasses. ..................................................... [Watashi wa] atarashii megane o kaimashita. [kau] [かう]
I bought a pair of socks. ................................................... [Watashi wa] issoku no kutsushita o kaimashita. [かいます。]
I just bought a pair of socks. ...........................................[Watashi wa] issoku no kutsushita o ......................[わたしは] いっそくのくつしたを
katta bakari desu. [kau] ....................................................[かったばかりです。[かう]

I just bought new sunglasses. .......................................[Watashi wa] atarashi sungurasu o .....................[わたしごは]あたらしいサングラスを
katta bakari desu. [kau] ....................................................[かったばかりです。[かう]

I just saw my belt. ......................................................[Watashi wa] watashi no beruto o ......................[わたしごは]わたしのベルトをみた
mita bakari desu. [miru] ..................................................[みたばかりです。[みる]

Is this your coat? .......................................................Kore wa anata no kōto desu ka. .......................[これはあなたのコートですか。

When the adverb "just" is used in a sentence, as in "I just bought a pair of socks.", The verb "just bought" is formed by using the informal past indicative form of the verb followed by "-bakari desu". In this case, the informal past indicative of "kau" (to buy) is "katta". "Just bought" is then "katta bakari desu". Likewise "just saw" is "mita bakari desu" etc.
I would like some red wine please.
Watashi wa redō wain o itadakimasu.

Do you like white wine? / Is white wine liked?
Howaito wain ga suki desu ka.

Can you see that red [color] box?
[Anata wa] sono aka iro no hako ga miemasu ka.

I threw away the white pillow.
[Watashi wa] sono shiro no makura o sutemashita.

The sky is very gray [color] today.
Kyō sora wa totemo haiiro desu.

The sunset
Nichibotsu

The sky will become orange at sunset.
Nichibotsu ni sora wa orenji ni narimasu.

probably
Tabun

The sky should be blue tomorrow. / The sky will probably be blue tomorrow.
Ashita sora wa tabun aoi desu.

I would like to buy a yellow shirt.
Watashi wa ki iro no shatsu o kaitai desu.

the forest
Mori

I don't like the color purple.
[Watashi wa] murasaki iro ga suki ja arimasen.

At night the sky is very black.
Yoru ni wa sora ga totemo kuroi desu.
He had a brown [color] car.  Kare wa cha iro no kuruma o motteimashita.  かれはちゃいろのくるまをもって
the hair  kami / kami no ke  きました。[もっている]
My younger brother's hair is brown.  [Watashi no] niisan no kami no ke wa  ちゃいろです。
Is it light brown?  Usui cha iro desu ka.  うすいちゃいろですか。
No, he has dark brown hair. / No, his hair is dark  lie, kare no kami no ke wa koi cha iro  いえ、かれのかみのけはこいち
brown.  desu.
My older sister's hair is blond.  Anc no kami no ke wa kinpatsu desu.  あねのかみのけはきんぱつです。
She drives a pink car. [L. She pink car in drives.]  Kanojo wa pinku no kuruma ni notteimasu.  かのじょはピンクのくるまにのっ
Beer is usually a gold color.  Biru wa taitei kin iro desu.  べきはたいていきんいろです。
It has a silver color.  Sore wa gin iro ga arimasu. [aru]  それはぎんいろがあります。[ある]
My uncle bought a big silver [color] truck.  [Watashi no] oji wa oki na gin iro no  わたしのおじはおきなぎんいろのトラックをかいました。[か
torakku o kaimashita. [kau] う]
It's gray weather. / This weather is gray  Kono tenki wa hai iro desu.  このてんきははいいろです。